Document: Technical Construction File

File No: TCF22041513MD

Revision:V1

Date: 2022.04.15

Boring machine

Models:TK, TH, FA, T, TPX, CKE, CLS, DL, DT, VT, C, CK, VTC, AK, SM, SC, SX, VDL, VDLS, HDAL, MDV, TD, VDF, VDM, VMC, MDH, X, XD-A, VC5A, VDU, VDW, VC, CMV, XKW

According to

Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC

presented by

General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd.
No.100,Liaohe East Road,Dalian Economic and Technological Development Zone-East Zone 1

Content

1.1 General description	Part I: General	2
1.2 Variations of the series products31.3 List of applicable regulations and standards41.4 Quality control system5Part II: Assessment of conformity62. Essential health and safety requirements checklist6Part III: Assessment report143.1 EN ISO 12100:2010 Assessment report and Risk assessment143.2 EN13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010 Assessment report633.3 EN 60204-1:2018 Assessment report79Annex: Technical Information170	1.1 General description.	2
1.4 Quality control system	•	
Part II: Assessment of conformity	1.3 List of applicable regulations and standards	4
2. Essential health and safety requirements checklist	1.4 Quality control system	5
Part III: Assessment report. 14 3.1 EN ISO 12100:2010 Assessment report and Risk assessment. 14 3.2 EN13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010 Assessment report. 63 3.3 EN 60204-1:2018 Assessment report. 79 Annex: Technical Information. 170	Part II: Assessment of conformity	6
3.1 EN ISO 12100:2010 Assessment report and Risk assessment. 14 3.2 EN13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010 Assessment report. 63 3.3 EN 60204-1:2018 Assessment report. 79 Annex: Technical Information. 170	2. Essential health and safety requirements checklist	6
3.2 EN13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010 Assessment report. 63 3.3 EN 60204-1:2018 Assessment report. 79 Annex: Technical Information. 170	Part III: Assessment report	14
3.3 EN 60204-1:2018 Assessment report	3.1 EN ISO 12100:2010 Assessment report and Risk assessment	14
Annex: Technical Information	3.2 EN13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010 Assessment report	63
	3.3 EN 60204-1:2018 Assessment report	79
A.1 Photo171	Annex: Technical Information	170
	A.1 Photo	171

Part I: General

1.1 General description

The product is Boring machine.

In order to prevent the main risks mentioned above, the protection guarding system are provided, and all the detail safety provision are constructed in accordance with the requirement of EN ISO 12100:2010 and EN13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010.

As for the compliance of low voltage risk, the inspection and test report carried out according to the European standards of EN 60204-1:2018.

In order to ensure the conformity for CE marking for these machines, some main European and/or International standards have been used to made assessment of conformity, they are:

- -EN ISO 12100:2010 and EN13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010 for checking of mechanical structures and carrying out risk assessment;
- -EN 60204-1:2018 for checking of electrical equipment;

The assessment reports for these applicable standards in detail have been included in the relevant sub-clauses of this technical construction file.

File No.: TCF22041513MD P2/171

1.2 Variations of the series products

Regarding the whole family of the series, they can be divided into various different groups according to their main features, they are:

TK、TH、FA、T、TPX、CKE、CLS、DL、DT、VT、C、CK、VTC、AK、SM、SC、SX、VDL、VDLS、HDAL、MDV、TD、VDF、VDM、VMC、MDH、X、XD-A、VC5A、VDU、VDW、VC、CMV、XKW

All models are with the same machine structure but with some small differences as described as the following:

- 1. The power is different.
- 2. The Spindle travel is different.
- 3. The weight is different.

To present the conformity of this series machine with Machinery Directive, we discuss the conformity systematically with the relative Directive and standards for XD-A as a basic evaluation in clause.

File No.: TCF22041513MD P3/171

1.3 List of applicable regulations and standards

Regulations

• Machinery Directive: 2006/42/EC

Standards

• EN ISO 12100: 2010

Safety of machinery — General principles for design — Risk assessment and risk reduction.

• EN 60204-1:2018

Safety of machinery - Electrical equipment of machines Part 1: General requirements

• EN 14120:2010

Safety of machinery — Guards — General requirements for the design and construction of fixed and movable guards

• EN ISO 13850:2008

Safety of machinery — Emergency stop —Principles for design

• EN 13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010

Safety of machine tools — Milling machines (including boring machines)

File No.: TCF22041513MD P4/171

1.4 Quality control system

In order to ensure the conformity of the series production, the General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd. has taken the related procedures mentioned below:

(1) Apply for the consultant form the qualified body in Italy.

The General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd. has applied for the consultant from Technical Inspection Certification.

The complete technical construction file (TCF) have been established before applying for the CE marking certificate.

(2) Carry out the inspection for parts and components according to the TCF

Before the assemblies of the series production, the QC engineers of General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd. has to check and inspect the technical specifications and intended functions of parts and components to ensure the correct use of them according to the contents of TCF and principle described in the related technical information.

- (3) Carry out the inspection & testing for the products before packing Before packing the products, the QC engineers of General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd. have to do the necessary inspection and testing to ensure the conformity of related requirements. In particular, they should do the testing and inspection of electrical characteristics and outer feature.
- (4) Carry out the inspection for the package. After finishing the necessary inspection and testing for the products, an

After finishing the necessary inspection and testing for the products, an inspection for the packing has to be done to ensure the necessary elements being included in this packing before shipment.

(5) Provision for the change of design

Any change of the products described in this TCF must be checked in detail and written down again in the TCF by the designer of General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd. if the change may effects the related electrical or mechanical characteristics.

(6) Provision for the Quality Assurance

For the provisions of internal control measures to ensure the conformity of series production of the machines, General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd. has built an internal quality control system in accordance with the international standard of ISO 9001.

File No.: TCF22041513MD P5/171

Part II: Assessment of conformity

2. Essential health and safety requirements checklist

File No.: TCF22041513MD P6/171

ASSESSMENT REPORT

per

Council Directive 2006/42/EC, Annex I

ESSENTIAL HEALTH AND SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

TCF

Reference No.: No: TCF22041513MD

Tested by(+ signature)......Jim Song

Reviewed by(+ signature)......Jack Ma

Date of issue: 2022-04-15

Number of pages (Report): 8

Applicant

Development Zone-East Zone 1

Test specification

Standard: Council Directive 2006/42/EC Annex I

Test procedure: CE-MD Non-standard test method: N.A.

Test item description:

Co.,Ltd.

Factory.....::General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp.

Co.,Ltd.

Trademark: NA

Model/Type reference: XD-A

Rating(s): 380V 50Hz

General product information:

The product is Boring machine.

File No.: TCF22041513MD P7/171

Council Directive 2006/42/EC, Annex I				
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict	

<u> </u>					
1	Essential health and safety requirements		-		
1.1	General remarks		-		
1.1.1	Definitions		P		
1.1.2	Principles of safety integration	Considered for the machine	P		
		professionally. See the			
		drawings and instruction.			
1.1.3	Materials and products	The materials and products is	P		
		safe, no hazards.			
1.1.4	Lighting		N P		
1.1.5	Design of machinery to facilitate its handling	te its handling The machine is well designed to facilitate its handling.			
1.1.6	Ergonomics	Comply with requirement	P		
1.1.7	Operating positions	No hazards in the operating positions	P		
1.1.8	Seating	No seat.	N		
1.2	Controls		-		
1.2.1	Safety and reliability of control systems	Reliable design, certificated control components provided, no dangerous.	P		
1.2.2	Control devices	Identification clear, durable. The movement of the control is consistent with its effect. Locations are adequate to operate.	P		
1.2.3	Starting	Start button provided. Not restart after stop.	P		
1.2.4	Stopping	See below.	P		
1.2.4.1		Mains power switch provided.	P		
1.2.4.1	Normal stopping	It cut off the power.	1		
1.2.4.2	Omegational stem	Stop button and soft stop	P		
1.2.4.2	Operational stop	button of touch screen used	1		
1.2.4.3	Emergency stop	cutton of touch screen used	P		
1.2.4.4	Assembly of machinery		N		
1.2.5	Selection of control or operating modes	NG 1 1 4 1	P		
		Manual and auto mode			
1.2.6	Failure of the power supply	AC power supply used. all the movement of the machine stopped immediately once failure of the power supply presented, don't lead dangerous situation.	P		
1.3	Protection against mechanical hazards	See below	P		
1.3.1	Risk of loss of stability	The machine is stable	P		
1 2 2	Disk of brook up during appartian	enough.	P		
1.3.2	Risk of break-up during operation	Fixed guard provided			
1.3.3	Risked due to falling or ejected objects	Guard to prevent the ejected objects.	P		
1.3.4	Risks due to surfaces, edges or angles	Smooth surface and edges	P		
1.3.5	Risks related to combined machinery		N		
1.3.6	conditions	g No such hazards	P		
1.3.7	Prevention of risks related to moving parts	The moving parts are separated by interlock guard and fixed guards. Some parts are added warning signs.	P		
1.3.8	Choice of protection against risk arising from CF22041513MD	m Guards are used to protect	P P8/1		

File No.: TCF22041513MD P8/171

General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd.

Council Directive 2006/42/EC, Annex I				
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict	
	•			

Clause	Requirement-Test	Kesuit-Keiliark	verturet
	moving parts	against risk.	
1.3.8.1	Moving transmission parts	Fixed guards provided, and	P
1.5.0.1	ivioving transmission parts		1
		all of the moving parts are separated by guard.	
1.3.8.2	Moving parts involved in the process	Fixed guards provided.	P
1.3.9	Risks of uncontrolled movements	No such risk.	N
1.3.9			P
	protection devices	See below	
1.4.1	General requirement	Comply with the requirement	P
1.4.2	Special requirements for guards		P
1.4.2.1	Fixed guards	Cannot be apart without tools	P
	Fixed guards must be fixed by systems that can	Can be opened only with	P
	be opened or removed only with tools.	tools	
	Their fixing systems must remain attached to	The bolts remain attached to	P
	the guards or to the machinery when the guards	I I	
	are removed.		
1.4.4.2	Interlocking movable guards		N
1.4.2.3	Adjustable guards restricting access	Not provided	N
1.4.3	Special requirements for protection devices	No such special requirements.	N
1.5	Protection against other hazards	See below	P
1.5.1	Electricity supply		P
1.5.1	Electricity supply	AC power supply provided	1
		and protection is enough, see	
1.5.2	G. A. T. A. S.	the report for EN 60204-1.	D.
1.5.2	Static electricity	Comply with the requirement.	P
1.7.2		PE system.	
1.5.3 1.5.4	Energy supply other than electricity	The machine should be well	P P
1.5.4	Error of fitting	fitted and installed by	Р
		Manufacturer. See the	
		drawings and instruction.	
1.5.5	Extreme temperatures		P
1.5.6	Fire	The machine was well designed and manufactured to	P
		avoid fire.	
1.5.7	Explosion	The machine can't used in	P
	1	potencial explosion	
		environment, and the	
		machine was well designed and manufactured to avoid	
		explosion.	
1.5.8	Noise	The noise that emitted by the	P
		machine is at a level	
		<85dB(A),	
		the operator worked around the control station.	
1.5.9	Vibration	COMMON	N
1.5.10	Radiation	Not within the assessment	N
		scope	
1.5.11	External radiation	Not within the assessment	N
		scope	
1.5.12	Laser equipment		N
1.5.13	Emissions of hazardous materials and	During the operation, using	P

File No.: TCF22041513MD P9/171

Council Directive 2006/42/EC, Annex I				
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict	

Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
		,	
	substances	the exhaust system	
1.5.14	Risk of being trapped in a machine	No such hazards	P
1.5.15	Risk of slipping, tripping or falling	Using personal fall protection equipment	P
1.5.16	Lightning		P
1.6	Maintenance	See below	P
1.6.1	Machinery maintenance	Professional maintainer	P
	ividenmery maintenance	required,see user manual. outside danger zones.	1
.6.2	Access to operating position and servicing points		P
1.6.3	Isolation of energy sources	See report of EN 60204-1.	P
.6.4	Operator intervention	Professional maintainer required	P
.6.5	Cleaning of internal parts	Easy to access and clean.	P
1.7	Indicators	See below	P
.7.1	Information and warnings on machinery	Comply with the requirement	P
1.7.1.1	Information and information devices	See the labels on the machine.	P
1.7.1.2	Warning devices	warning device and warning signs are provided	P
1.7.2	Warning of residual risks	Comply with requirements. See the copy of marking label.	P
.7.3	Marking of machinery	See the marking on the machine.	P
.7.4	Instruction		P
.7.4.1	General principles for the drafting of instructions	See the instruction	P
.7.4.2	Contents of the instructions	See the instruction	P
.7.4.3	Sales literature	The same as instruction	P
2	SUPPLEMENTARY ESSENTIAL HEALTH AND SAFETY REQUIREMENTS FOR CERTAIN CATEGORIES OF MACHINERY		N
2.1.	FOODSTUFFS MACHINERY AND MACHINERY FOR COSMETICS OR PHARMACEUTICAL PRODUCTS		N
2.2	PORTABLE HAND-HELD AND/OR HAND-GUIDED MACHINERY		N
2.3	MACHINERY FOR WORKING WOOD AND MATERIAL WITH SIMILAR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS		N
3	Essential health and safety requirement to offset the particular hazards due to the mobility machinery	1 - 1	N
3.1	General		N
3.1.1	Definition		N
3.2	Work positions		N
3.2.1	Driving position		N
			N
3.2.2	Seating		N
3.2.3	Positions for other persons		
3.3	Controls		N

File No.: TCF22041513MD P10/171

General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd.

Council Directive 2006/42/EC, Annex I					
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict		
			3.7		
3.3.1	Control devices		N		
3.3.2	Starting/moving		N		
3.3.3	Travelling function		N		
3.3.4	Movement of pedestrian-controlled machinery		N		
3.3.5	Control circuit failure		N		
3.4	Protection against mechanical hazards		N		
3.4.1	Uncontrolled moverments		N		
3.4.2	Moving transmission parts		N		
3.4.3	Roll-over and tip-over		N		
3.4.4	Falling objects		N		
3.4.5	Means of access		N		
3.4.6	Towing devices		N		
3.4.7	Transmission of power between self-propelled machinery (or tractor) and recipient machinery		N		
3.5	Protection against other hazards		N		
3.5.1	Batteries		N		
3.5.2	Fire		N		
3.5.3	Emissions of hazardous substances		N		
3.6	Indications		N		
3.6.1	Signs, signals and warnings		N		
3.6.2	Marking		N		
3.6.3	Instruction handbook		N		
3.6.3.1	Vibrations		N		
3.6.3.2	Multiple uses		N		
4	Essential health and safety requirement to		N		
	offset the particular hazards due to a lifting				
	operation		NI		
4.1	General		N		
4.1.1	Definition		N		
4.1.2	Protection against mechanical hazards		N		
4.1.2.1	Risk due to lack of stability		N		
4.1.2.2	Machinery running on guide rails and rail tracks		N		
4.1.2.3	Mechanical strength		N		
4.1.2.4	Pulleys, drums, wheels, chains or ropes		N		
4.1.2.5	Lifting accessories and their components		N		
4.1.2.6	Control of movements		N		
4.1.2.7	Movements of loads during handling		N		
4.1.2.8	Machinery serving fixed landings		N		
4.1.2.8.1	Movements of the carrier		N		
4.1.2.8.2	Access to the carrier		N		
4.1.2.8.3	Risks due to contact with the moving carrier		N		
4.1.2.8.4	Risk due to the load falling off the carrier		N		
4.1.2.8.5	Landings		N		
4.1.3	Fitness for purpose		N		
4.2	Requirements for machinery whose power source is other than manual effort		N		
4.2.1	Control of movements		N		

File No.: TCF22041513MD P11/171

General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd.

	Council Directive 2006/42/EC.	, Annex I	
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
4.2.2	Loading control		N
4.2.3	Installation guided by cables		N
			N
4.3	Information and markings		
4.3.1	Chains, ropes and webbing		N
4.3.2	Lifting accessories		N
4.3.3	Lifting machinery		N
4.4	Instructions		N
4.4.1	Lifting accessories		N
4.4.2	Lifting machinery		N
5	Essential health and safety requirement for machinery intended for underground work	Not such machine	N
5.1	Risks due to lack of stability		N
5.2	Movement		N
5.3	Control devices		N
5.4	Stopping		N
5.5	Fire		N
5.6	Exhaust emissions		N
6	Essential health and safety requirement to offset the particular hazards due to the lifting or moving of persons		N
6.1	General		N
6.1.1	Mechanical strength		N
6.1.2	Loading control for machinery moved by power other than human strength		N
6.2	Control devices		N
6.3	Risk to persons in or on the carrier		N
6.3.1	Risks due to movements of the carrier		N
6.3.2	Risk of persons falling from the carrier		N
6.3.3	Risk due to objects falling on the carrier		N
6.4	Machinery serving fixed landings		N
6.4.1	Risks to persons in or on the carrier		N
6.4.2	Controls at landings		N
6.4.3	Access to the carrier		N
6.5	Markings		N

File No.: TCF22041513MD P12/171

Notice

- 1. This test report shall be invalidation without the cachet of the testing laboratory.
- 2. This copied report shall be invalidation without sealed the cachet of the testing laboratory.
- 3. This report shall be invalidation without tester signature, reviewer signature and approver signature.
- 4. This altered report shall be invalidation.
- 5. Client shall put forward demurrer within 15days after received report. The testing laboratory shall refuse disposal if exceeded the time limit.
- 6. The test results presented in this report relate only to the object tested.

File No.: TCF22041513MD P13/171

0	1	1 ~	D 1:	3 6 1 .	T 1 T	0.17	~	T . 1
(teneral	Llechno	logy Grou	n Dalian	Machine	Tool Im	n.&Exn.	. Co	Ltd

Part III: Assessment report
3.1 EN ISO 12100:2010 Assessment report and Risk assessment

File No.: TCF22041513MD P14/171

ASSESSMENT REPORT

per

EN ISO 12100:2010

Safety of machinery — General principles for design —

Risk assessment and risk reduction

TCF

Reference No.: No: TCF22041513MD

Tested by(+ signature)......Jim Song

Reviewed by(+ signature)......Jack Ma

Date of issue: 2022-04-15

Number of pages (Report): 45

Applicant

Address: No.100, Liaohe East Road, Dalian Economic and Technological

Development Zone-East Zone 1

Test specification

Standard: EN ISO 12100:2010

Test procedure: CE-MD

Non-standard test method: N.A.

Test item description:

Manufacturer.....:: General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp.

Co.,Ltd.

Factory.....: :General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp.

Co.,Ltd.

Trademark: NA

Model/Type reference: XD-A

Rating(s): 380V 50Hz

General product information:

The product is Boring machine.

File No.: TCF22041513MD P15/171

1. Risk assessment

This risk assessment report is based on the methods in the EN ISO 12100:2010 and EN ISO 14121-2 standards, and the 4 factors S-A-G-W have been used for evaluating the level of risks.

S: Severity of possible harm

- S1: Slight (normally reversible)
- S2: Serious (normally irreversible)
- S3: Cause a few men die
- S4: Calamity or cause many men die

A: Frequency any duration of exposure

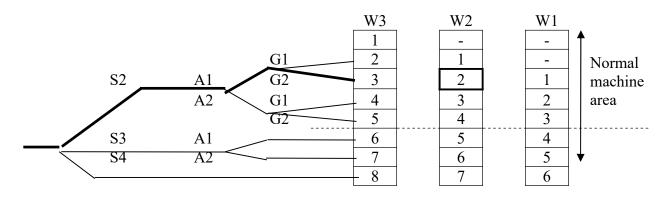
- A1: Seldom to very often
- A2: Frequent to continuous

G: Possibilities of avoidance

- G1: Possible
- G2: Impossible

W: Probability of occurrence of harm

- W1: Low
- W2: Medium
- W3: High



Solutions for the level of hazards

- 1: Protected by warning sign
- 2: Protected by guard and warning sign
- 3: Consider the other design, choose the best one, add both guard and warning sign
- 4: Consider another two design, choose the best one, add both guard and warning sign
- 5: Consider another three design, choose the best one, add both guard and warning sign

NO.	Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Level
	Mechanical hazards					
1.0-1	Mechanical hazards due to machine parts or work pieces					
1.0-2	Mechanical hazards due to accumulation of energy inside the					
	machinery					
1.1	Crushing	2	1	1	2	1
1.2	Shearing	2	1	1	2	1
1.3	Cutting or severing	2	1	1	2	1
1.4	Entanglement	2	1	1	2	1
1.5	Drawing-in or trapping	2	1	1	2	1
1.6	Impact	2	1	1	2	1
File N	o.: TCF22041513MD		-			P16/171

File No.: TCF22041513MD

General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd.

1.7 Stabbing or puncture	2	1			_	
		1	1	2	1	
1.8 Friction or abrasion	1					
1.9 High pressure fluid injection or ejection						
Electrical hazards				T -	1	
2.1 Contact with live parts						
2.2 Contact with parts which have become live under faulty conditions	2	1	1	2	1	
2.3 Approach to live part under high voltage						
2.4 Electrostatic phenomena						
2.5 Thermal radiation or other phenomena such as projection of molten particles and chemical effects form short-circuits, overloads etc.						
Thermal hazards				1		
Burns, scalds and other injuries by a possible contact of persons with objects or materials with an extreme high or low temperature, by flames or explosions and also by the radiation of heat sources						
3.2 Damage to health by hot or cold working environment						
Hazards generated by noise	1	1		1	1	
4.1 Hearing loss (deafness), other physiological disorders	1	1	1	1	-	
4.2 Interference with speech communication, acoustic signals,	1	1	1	1		
etc.	1	1	1	1	-	
Hazards generated by vibration						
5.1 Use of hand-help machines resulting in a variety of						
neurological and vascular disorder						
Whole body vibration, particular when combined with poor						
postures						
Hazards generated by radiation				1		
6.1 Low frequency, radio frequency radiation, microwaves						
6.2 Infrared, visible and ultraviolet light						
6.3 X and gamma rays						
Alpha, beta rays, electron or ion beams, neutrons						
6.5 Lasers						
Hazards generated by materials and substances processed or	used l	by th	e ma	chine	ry	
7.1 Hazards from contact with or inhalation of harmful fluids, gases, mists, fumes and dusts	1	1	1	1	-	
7.2 Fire and explosion hazard						
7.3 Biological and micro-biological (viral or bacterial) hazards	1	1	1	1	-	
Hazards generated by neglecting ergonomic principles i	n mac	hine	desig	gn		
8.1 Unhealthy postures or excessive effort	2	1	1	2	1	
8.2 Inadequate consideration of hand-arm or foot-leg anatomy	2	1	1	2	1	
8.3 Neglected use of personal protection equipment						
8.4 Inadequate local lighting						
8.5 Mental overload or underload, stress						
8.6 Human error, human behavior	2	1	1	2	1	
8.7 Inadequate design, location or identification of manual controls	2	1	1	2	1	
8.8 Inadequate design, location or identification of manual	2	1	1	2	1	
controls			1	1		

	General Technology Group Dalian Mac	111111111111111111111111111111111111111	001 111	ιρ. & Ε.	хр. со	,Lu.
9	Combination of hazards					
	Unexpected start-up, unexpected overrun/over	r-spec	ed			
10.1	Failure/disorder of the control system	1	1	1	1	-
10.2	Restoration of energy on supply after an interruption	1	1	1	1	-
10.3	External influences on electrical equipment	1	1	1	1	-
10.4	Other external influences (gravity, wind, etc.)					
10.5	Errors in the software					
10.6	Error made by the operator (due to mismatch of machinery					
	with human characteristics and abilities, see 8.6)					
	sibility of stopping the machine in the best possible conditions					
11	Impossibility of stopping the machine in the best possible conditions					
	Variations in the rotational speed of tool	S				
12	Variations in the rotational speed of tools					
	Failure of the power supply		•			
13	Failure of the power supply	1	1	1	1	-
	Failure of the control circuit		•		•	
14	Failure of the control circuit	1	1	1	1	-
	Errors of fitting					
15	Errors of fitting	1	1	1	1	-
	Break-up during operation		•			
16	Break-up during operation					
	Falling or ejected objects or fluids		1		•	
17	Falling or ejected objects or fluids	1	1	1	1	-
	Loss of stability / overturning of machine	ry	•			
18	Loss of stability / overturning of machinery	1	1	1	1	-
	Slip, trip and fall of persons (related to mach	inery)			
19	Slip, trip and fall of persons(related to machinery)	1	1	1	1	-
	Additional hazards, hazardous situations and hazardous ev	ents	due to	o mol	oility	
20	Relating to the traveling function					
20.1	Movement when starting the engine					
20.2	Movement without a driver at the driving position					
20.3	Movement without all parts in a safe position					
20.4	Excessive speed of pedestrian controlled machinery					
20.5	Excessive oscillations when moving					
20.6	Insufficient ability of machinery to be slowed down, stopped					
	and immobilisated					
	Linked to the work position (including driving station)	on th	e ma	chine		
21.1	Fall of persons during access to (or at/from) the work position					
21.2	Exhaust gases/lack of oxygen at the work position					
21.3	Fire (flammability of the cab, lack of extinguishing means)					
21.4	Mechanical hazards at the work position:					
21.1	contact with the wheels:					
	rollover;					
	fall of objects, penetration by objects;					
	break-up of parts rotation at high speed;					
	contact of persons with machine parts or tools (pedestrian					
	controlled machines)					
21.5	Insufficient visibility form the work positions					

	General Technology Group Dalian Mac		T TI	ıρ.α∟	хр. Со	
21.6	Inadequate lighting					
21.7	Inadequate seating					
21.8	Noise at the work position					
21.9	Vibration at the work position					
21.10	Insufficient means for evacuation/emergency exit					
	he control system					
22.1	Inadequate location of manual controls					
22.2	Inadequate design of manual controls and their mode of					
	operation					
	Form handling the machine (lack of stabili	ty)				
23	Form handling the machine (lack of stability)					
Due to t	he power source and to the transmission of power		ı	1		
24.1	Hazards form the engine and the batteries					
24.2	Hazards form the transmission of power between machines					
24.3	Hazards form coupling and towing					
	third persons	<u> </u>	1	1	1	
25.1	Unauthorized start-up/use	1	1	1	1	_
25.2	Drift of a part away from its stopping position	1	1	1	1	-
25.2	Lack or inadequacy of visual or acoustic warning means					
23.3	Insufficient instructions for the driver/operations	oton				
26	•	1	1	1	1	
26	Insufficient instructions for the driver/operator			<i> </i> 40 1:6		
27	Additional hazards, hazardous situations and hazardous e	vents	aue	to III	ung 	1
27	Mechanical hazards and hazardous events					
27.1	Form load falls, collisions, machine tipping caused by:					
27.1.1	Lack of stability					
27.1.2	Uncontrolled loading-overloading-overturning moments exceeded					
27.1.3	Uncontrolled amplitude of movements					
27.1.4	Unexpected/unintended movement of loads					
27.1.5	Inadequate holding devices/accessories					
27.1.6	Collision of more then one machine					
27.2	Form access of persons to load support					
27.3	Form derailment					
27.4	Form insufficient mechanical strength of parts					
27.5	Form inadequate selection of chains, ropes, lifting and					
27.5	accessories and their inadequate integration into the machine					
27.6	Form inadequate selection of chains, ropes, lifting and					
27.0	accessories and their inadequate integration into the machine					
27.7	Form lowering of the load under the control of friction brake					
27.8	Form abnormal conditions of					
_,.0	assembly/testing/use/maintenance					
27.9	Form the effect of load on persons (impact by load or					
27.9						
Elect.	counterweight)					
	al hazards	Ι			T	
28.1	Form lightning					
	generated by neglecting ergonomic principles					
29.1	Insufficient visibility from the driving position					<u></u>
Addi	tional hazards, hazardous and situations and hazardous evo work	ents d	lue to	und	ergro	und
30	Mechanical hazards and hazardous events due to:					
				-		

	87 1					
30.1	Lack of stability of powered roof supports					
30.2	Failing accelerator or brake control of machinery running on					
	rails					
30.3	Failing or lack of dead man's control of machinery running					
	on rails					
31	Restricted movement of persons					
32	Fire and explosion					
33	Emission of dust, gases etc.					
Additio	onal hazards, hazardous situations and hazardous events d of persons	ue to	the li	fting	or r	noving
34	Mechanical hazards and hazardous events due to:					
34.1	Inadequate mechanical strength-inadequate working coefficients					
34.2	Failing of loading control					
34.3	Failing of controls in person carrier (function, priority)					
34.4	Over speed of person carrier					
34.4 35	Falling of person from person carrier					
36	Falling or overturning of person carrier					
30 37	Human error, human behavior					
NO.	Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Level
1.1	Crushing	2	1 1	1	$\frac{\mathbf{v}}{2}$	1
Where		4	1	1	4	1
When	Between fixed and moving elements of the machine	1				
	Moving axes, workpiece and tool clamping setting, loading/un	nioaa	ing, m	iainie	enan	<u>se</u>
Improve	ment result	C			**7	T1
1 4.00::	Method	S 1	A 1	G 1	W	Level
	ng suitable warning signs.	<i>1</i>	1	1	1	_
	operation by training/authorized persons. tion of the machine shall conform to the instructions of the					
-	on manual.					
	and inspection according to the specified durations of the on manual.					
	the guards					
J. Osing	the guaras					
NO.	Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Level
1.2	Shearing	2	1	1	2	1
Where	Between tool/ spindle and table/ workpiece					
When	Moving axes, machine operation					
	ment result					
IIIpro · C	Method	S	Α	G	W	Level
1 Affirii	ng suitable warning signs.	1	1	1	1	
	operation by training/authorized persons.	_	1	1	1	
	tion of the machine shall conform to the instructions of the					
_	on manual.					
	and inspection according to the specified durations of the					
	on manual.					
	the guards					
NO.	Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Level
1.3	Cutting or severing	$\frac{3}{2}$	1	1	$\frac{1}{2}$	1
Where	At spindle or tool					
When	Spindle running					
	ment result					
1111p10vC	TOF 22041512MD					

File No.: TCF22041513MD

	Method	S	A	$\frac{\text{ip.&E}}{\mathbf{G}}$	$\frac{\mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{v}} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{\mathbf{W}}$	
1 Affiri	ng suitable warning signs.	1	$\frac{A}{1}$	1	1	Leve
	operation by training/authorized persons.	1	1	1	1	_
-	ation of the machine shall conform to the instructions of the					
-	ion manual.					
	k and inspection according to the specified durations of the					
	ion manual.					
	g the guards					
<i>c. csm</i>	, the guaran					
NO.	Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Level
1.4	Entanglement	2	1	1	2	1
Where	At spindle or tool					
When	Rotating spindle or tool removal of swarf/chips, Workpiece lo	ad/ur	iload,	posit	iona	l
	adjustment, manual swarf/chip removal, cutting fluid applicat		,	1		
Improve	ement result					
•	Method	S	A	G	W	Level
1. Affixi	ng suitable warning signs.					
2. Only	operation by training/authorized persons.					
3. Opera	ation of the machine shall conform to the instructions of the					
instruct	ion manual.	1	1	1	1	_
4. Checi	k and inspection according to the specified durations of the					
instruct	ion manual.					
	g the guards.					
NO.	Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Level
1.5	Drawing in or trapping	2	1	1	2	1
Where	Envelope of movement of workpiece on table axes; envelope of spindle head	of mo	vemer	it of t	ool ii	n
When	Rapid travel of table or spindle head, power-operated motion tool in spindle	n of w	orkpi	ece oi	n tab	le or
Improv	ement result					
Method		S	A	G	W	Leve
						1
1.Only	authorized person can use the machine.	1	1	1	1	_
_	reference to the instruction manual before using this machine.					
	ection of protective earthing indeed.					
4.Excel	lent electrical shielded housing.					
5.Perio	dic maintenance.					
NO.	Hazards source	S	Α	G	W	Level
1.6	Impact	2	1	1	2	1
Where	At spindle or tool			1		
When	Moving/rotating tool, spindle running					
	ement result					
	Method	S	A	G	W	Leve
1. Affixi	ng suitable warning signs.	1	1	1	1	_
	operation by training/authorized persons.	-	1	-	1	
	of a management of the second	1	1		1	1

_	C.1 1: 1 11 C 1 :					
3. Opera	ation of the machine shall conform to the instructions of the					
instructi	on manual.					
4. Check	and inspection according to the specified durations of the					
instructi	on manual.					
5. Using	the guards					
NO.	Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Level
1.7	Stabbing or puncture	2	1	1	2	1

File No.: TCF22041513MD

	General Technology Group Dalian Ma			_		
Where	At tool in spindle, at sharp cutter faces, at workpiece, table, and discharge zones					
When	Process control, during manual tool change, during loading/	unload	ding a	ınd ci	leanir	ıg
	ement result					
Method		S	A	G	W	Leve
1. Affixi	ng suitable warning signs.	1	1	1	1	-
2. Only	operation by training/authorized persons.					
3. Oper	ation of the machine shall conform to the instructions of the					
instruct	ion manual.					
4. Chec	k and inspection according to the specified durations of the					
instruct	ion manual.					
5. Using	g the guards					
NO.	Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Leve
2.1	Contact with live parts	2	1	1	2	1
Where	Electrical cabinet, terminal boxes, control panels at machine					
When	Contact with live parts or connections during commissioning shooting		tenar	ice, ti	roubl	е
Improve	ement result					
Method		S	A	G	W	Leve
1 Only	operation by training/authorized persons.	1	1	1	1	1
	ation of the machine shall conform to the instructions of the	1	1	1	1	_
	ion manual.					
	k and inspection according to the specified durations of the					
	ion manual.					
	g safety components in accordance with those relevant					
_	ional standards.					
	f warning label.					
J. Ose o	warning twoci.					
NO.	Hazards source	S	Α	G	W	Level
2.2	Contact with parts which have become live under faulty		A	<u> </u>		
۷.۷	conditions	2	1	1	2	1
Where	At machine or faulty part		1	I	I	1
When	Contact with live parts or connections during operation, insp	nection	n and	main	tonar	nce of
WHCH	machine	eciioi	ı ana	main	ienur	ice oj
Improve	ement result					
Improve	Method	S	Α	G	W	Level
1 Only	operation by training/authorized persons.	1	1	1	1	Level
-	ation of the machine shall conform to the instructions of the	1	1	1	1	-
-	ion manual.					
	k and inspection according to the specified durations of the					
	ion manual.					
	g safety components in accordance with those relevant					
-	ional standards.					
	f warning label.	- C	A	<u> </u>	XX 7	Love
NO.	Hazards source	S	A	G	VV	Level

File No.: TCF22041513MD P22/171

1

Hearing loss (deafness), other physiological disorders

Near machine

Where

	Motion of power transmission elements, cutting processes and during operating cycle of machine	l fluid	pow	er sys	tems	
Improve	ement result					
Method	Ament result	S	A	G	W	Leve
1. Noise	reduction at source by design	1	1	1	1	_
	reference to the instruction manual before using this machine.					
	before operation.					
NO.	Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Leve
4.2	Interference with speech communication, acoustic signals, etc.	1	1	1	1	-
Where	Near machine					
When	Air blast used for cleaning of tool or pallet locations during of	perati	ing cı	cle o	f mac	chine
	ement result				,	
Method		S	A	G	W	Leve
1. Noise	reduction at source by design	1	1	1	1	_
	reference to the instruction manual before using this machine.	_	_	_	_	
	before operation.					
NO.	Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Leve
7.1	Hazards from contact with or inhalation of harmful fluids,	1	1	1	1	_
,	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	-	_	_	_	
	gases, mists, rumes and dusts					1
Where	gases, mists, fumes and dusts At or near machine					
When	At or near machine Conditions near machine caused by ejection of particles of wo or mist from metal working fluids during operating cycle of the			l, flui	id dro	oplets
When	At or near machine Conditions near machine caused by ejection of particles of wo			d, flui	w	Deve
When Improve Method I.Only a 2.Make 3.Check 4.Period	At or near machine Conditions near machine caused by ejection of particles of wo or mist from metal working fluids during operating cycle of the ment result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. before operation. dic maintenance.	e mac	chine			
When Improve Method 1.Only c 2.Make 3.Check 4.Perioc 5.Use sc	At or near machine Conditions near machine caused by ejection of particles of wo or mist from metal working fluids during operating cycle of the ment result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. before operation. dic maintenance. afety guard.	s 1	A 1	G 1	W 1	Leve 1
When Improve Method 1.Only of 2.Make 3.Check 4.Period 5.Use so NO.	At or near machine Conditions near machine caused by ejection of particles of wo or mist from metal working fluids during operating cycle of the ment result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. before operation. dic maintenance. ufety guard. Hazards source	S 1	A 1 A	G 1	W 1	
When Improve Method 1.Only a 2.Make 3.Check 4.Period 5.Use sa NO. 7.3	At or near machine Conditions near machine caused by ejection of particles of wo or mist from metal working fluids during operating cycle of the ment result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. before operation. dic maintenance. ufety guard. Hazards source Biological and micro-biological (viral or bacterial) hazards	s 1	A 1	G 1	W 1	Leve 1
When Improve Method 1.Only of 2.Make 3.Check 4.Period 5.Use so NO. 7.3 Where	At or near machine Conditions near machine caused by ejection of particles of wo or mist from metal working fluids during operating cycle of the ment result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. before operation. dic maintenance. afety guard. Hazards source Biological and micro-biological (viral or bacterial) hazards At or near machine	S I S I	A 1 A 1	G 1	W 1 W 1	Leve l -
When Improve Method 1.Only a 2.Make 3.Check 4.Period 5.Use sa NO. 7.3	At or near machine Conditions near machine caused by ejection of particles of wo or mist from metal working fluids during operating cycle of the ment result tuthorized person can use the machine. Treference to the instruction manual before using this machine. The before operation. The dic maintenance. The guard. Hazards source Biological and micro-biological (viral or bacterial) hazards At or near machine contact with hydraulic or metal working fluid as liquid or mission.	S I S I	A 1 A 1	G 1	W 1 W 1	Leve l -
Improve Method 1.Only a 2.Make 3.Check 4.Period 5.Use sa NO. 7.3 Where	At or near machine Conditions near machine caused by ejection of particles of wo or mist from metal working fluids during operating cycle of the ment result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. before operation. dic maintenance. afety guard. Hazards source Biological and micro-biological (viral or bacterial) hazards At or near machine contact with hydraulic or metal working fluid as liquid or mist bacteria during operation, process control, and maintenance	S I S I	A 1 A 1	G 1	W 1 W 1	Leve l -
When Improve Method 1.Only of 2.Make 3.Check 4.Period 5.Use so NO. 7.3 Where When	At or near machine Conditions near machine caused by ejection of particles of wo or mist from metal working fluids during operating cycle of the ment result tuthorized person can use the machine. Treference to the instruction manual before using this machine. The before operation. The dic maintenance. The guard. Hazards source Biological and micro-biological (viral or bacterial) hazards At or near machine contact with hydraulic or metal working fluid as liquid or mission.	S I S I t cont	A A A A A A A ainin	G G G I g detr	W 1 W 1 ritus	Leve l - Level -
When Improve Method 1.Only a 2.Make 3.Check 4.Period 5.Use sa NO. 7.3 Where When Improve	At or near machine Conditions near machine caused by ejection of particles of wo or mist from metal working fluids during operating cycle of the ment result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. before operation. dic maintenance. ifety guard. Hazards source Biological and micro-biological (viral or bacterial) hazards At or near machine contact with hydraulic or metal working fluid as liquid or mist bacteria during operation, process control, and maintenance ement result	S I S I S	A A A I ainin	G I G G I G G G G G	W I Vitus	Leve l -
When Improve Method 1.Only of 2.Make 3.Check 4.Period 5.Use so NO. 7.3 Where When Improve Method 1.Only of	At or near machine Conditions near machine caused by ejection of particles of wo or mist from metal working fluids during operating cycle of the ement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. before operation. dic maintenance. ufety guard. Hazards source Biological and micro-biological (viral or bacterial) hazards At or near machine contact with hydraulic or metal working fluid as liquid or mist bacteria during operation, process control, and maintenance ement result	S I S I t cont	A A A A A A A ainin	G G G I g detr	W 1 W 1 ritus	Leve l - Level -
When Improve Method 1.Only a 2.Make 3.Check 4.Period 5.Use sa NO. 7.3 Where When Improve Method 1.Only a 2.Make	At or near machine Conditions near machine caused by ejection of particles of wo or mist from metal working fluids during operating cycle of the ement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. before operation. dic maintenance. tfety guard. Hazards source Biological and micro-biological (viral or bacterial) hazards At or near machine contact with hydraulic or metal working fluid as liquid or mist bacteria during operation, process control, and maintenance ement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine.	S I S I S	A A A I ainin	G I G G I G G G G G	W I Vitus	Leve l - Level -
When Improve Method 1.Only a 2.Make 3.Check 4.Period 5.Use sa NO. 7.3 Where When Improve Method 1.Only a 2.Make 3.Check 3.Check	At or near machine Conditions near machine caused by ejection of particles of woo or mist from metal working fluids during operating cycle of the ement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. before operation. dic maintenance. afety guard. Hazards source Biological and micro-biological (viral or bacterial) hazards At or near machine contact with hydraulic or metal working fluid as liquid or mist bacteria during operation, process control, and maintenance ement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. before operation.	S I S I S	A A A I ainin	G I G G I G G G G G	W I Vitus	Leve l - Level -
When Improve Method 1.Only of 2.Make 3.Check 4.Period 5.Use so NO. 7.3 Where When Improve Method 1.Only of 2.Make 3.Check 4.Period 4.Period	At or near machine Conditions near machine caused by ejection of particles of wo or mist from metal working fluids during operating cycle of the ement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. before operation. dic maintenance. If the state of the instruction manual before using this machine. If the state of the instruction manual before using this machine. Contact with machine of the state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine.	S I S I S	A A A I ainin	G I G G I G G G G G	W I Vitus	Leve l - Level -
When Improve Method 1. Only a 2. Make 3. Check 4. Period 5. Use sa NO. 7.3 Where When Improve Method 1. Only a 2. Make 3. Check 4. Period 5. Use sa	At or near machine Conditions near machine caused by ejection of particles of wo or mist from metal working fluids during operating cycle of the ment result Tuthorized person can use the machine. Treference to the instruction manual before using this machine. before operation. This maintenance. The guard. Hazards source Biological and micro-biological (viral or bacterial) hazards At or near machine contact with hydraulic or metal working fluid as liquid or mist bacteria during operation, process control, and maintenance ement result Tuthorized person can use the machine. Treference to the instruction manual before using this machine. before operation. This machine dic maintenance. The guard.	S 1 S 1 S I	A 1 ainin A 1	G G I g detri	W I W I W I I I I I I I I I	Level - and Level -
When Improve Method 1.Only of 2.Make 3.Check 4.Period 5.Use so NO. 7.3 Where When Improve Method 1.Only of 2.Make 3.Check 4.Period 4.Period	At or near machine Conditions near machine caused by ejection of particles of wo or mist from metal working fluids during operating cycle of the ement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. before operation. dic maintenance. If the state of the instruction manual before using this machine. If the state of the instruction manual before using this machine. Contact with machine of the state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine. The state of the instruction manual before using this machine.	S I S I S	A A A I ainin	G I G G I G G G G G	W I Vitus	Leve l - Level -

		Pull	, will	5	
	S	A	G	W	Level
uthorized person can use the machine.	1	1	1	1	_
•					
Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Level
Inadequate consideration of hand-arm or foot-leg anatomy	2	1	1	2	1
	on po	ints	1		
			ntrol,	and	
ment result					-
	S	A	G	W	Level
uthorized person can use the machine.	1	1	1	1	_
•			-	-	
Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Level
	2	1	1		1
	_				
ment result	~		-		Τ
			_		Level
	1	1	1	1	_
		A		111	T1
			_	_	Level
controls	2		<i>I</i>	2	1
	cle				
ment result					
	S	A	G	W	Level
1	1	1	1	1	_
reference to the instruction manual before using this machine.					
	S	A	G	W	Level
Inadequate design, location or identification of manual controls	2	1	1	2	1
At or near machine	•				
Misinterpretation of displayed information during setting, ope	ratin	g cyc	le		
ment result					
	S	A	G	W	Level
uthorized person can use the machine.	1	1	1	1	_
•					
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					
0 1					
	Lifting and reaching while handling workpiece, tools, and mailoading/unloading, process control, and maintenance ment result unthorized person can use the machine. In the process with machine with mac	Lifting and reaching while handling workpiece, tools, and machine loading/unloading, process control, and maintenance ment result Sample before using this machine. Inguity before using this machine. Inguity before using this machine. Industrial person can use the machine. Industrial person can use the machine using this machine. Industrial person can use the machine using this machine. Inadequate consideration of hand-arm or foot-leg anatomy 2	Lifting and reaching while handling workpiece, tools, and machine particolating/unloading, process control, and maintenance ment result S	Lifting and reaching while handling workpiece, tools, and machine parts duril loading/unloading, process control, and maintenance ment result S A G authorized person can use the machine. g before using this machine. Hazards source Inadequate consideration of hand-arm or foot-leg anatomy At load/unload and tool mounting positions, maintenance action points Imappropriate location of controls during loading/unloading, process control, maintenance ment result S A G Inadequate design, location and use the machine. Hazards source Maintenance S A G Inadequate design, location or identification of manual Lat load/unload, tool mounting positions at load/unload. Reasonably foreseeable misuse, inadvertent operation of controls, incorrect was material and cutter handling and setting during loading/unloading, process of handling ment result S A G G Human error, human behavior At load/unload, tool mounting positions at load/unload. Reasonably foreseeable misuse, inadvertent operation of controls, incorrect was material and cutter handling and setting during loading/unloading, process of handling ment result S A G Buthorized person can use the machine. In a lateral source Inadequate design, location or identification of manual Lateral source Inadequate design, location or identification of manual Lateral source S A G Inadequate design, location or identification of manual Lateral source S A G Inadequate design, location or identification of manual Lateral source S A G Inadequate design, location or identification of manual Lateral source Inadequate design, location or identification of manual Lateral source S A G Inadequate design, location or identification of manual Lateral source S A G Inadequate design, location or identification of manual Lateral source S A G Inadequate design, location or identification of manual Lateral source S A G Inadequate design, location or identification of manual Lateral source S A G Inadequate design, location or identification of manual Later	ment result S

	General Technology Group Dalian Mach	nine T	ool In	np.&E	xp. Co	o.,Ltd.
NO.	Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Level
10.1	Failure/disorder of the control system	1	1	1	1	-
Where	At machine			•		
When	mechanical hazards associated with selected machine moveme	nt du	ring	settin	g, cle	aning
Improve	ement result				<u></u>	
Method		S	Α	G	W	Level
1.Only	authorized person can use the machine.	1	1	1	1	_
	reference to the instruction manual before using this machine.					
	before operation.					
	dic maintenance.					
NO.	Hazards source	S	Α	G	W	Level
10.2	Restoration of energy on supply after an interruption	1	1	1	1	_
Where	At or near machine		1			
When	Unexpected movements of machine during setting, cleaning or	mair	ntena	псе		
	ement result					
Method		S	Α	G	W	Level
	authorized person can use the machine.	1	1	1	1	
	reference to the instruction manual before using this machine.	1	1	1	1	
	ection of protective earthing indeed.					
	ent electrical shielded housing.					
	dic maintenance.					
0.1 0, 100	we manuelanee.					
NO.	Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Level
10.3	External influences on electrical equipment	1	1	1	1	_
Where	At or near machine					
When	Unpredictable behavior of electronic controls due to electroma	ionet	ic int	erfere	ence o	luring
	setting, cleaning or maintenance.	·3····		.,		
Improve	ement result					
Method		S	A	G	W	Level
	ectrical equipments have been submitted to carry out the EMC		1	1	1	_
	according to relevant EN standards and get the CE E-mark.	_	_	_	_	
_	ection of protective earthing indeed.					
	lent electrical shielded housing.					
3. Exect	tent eteet teat smetaea nousing.					
NO.	Hazards source	S	Α	G	W	Level
13	Failure of the power supply	1	1	1	1	Level
Where	At machine where machine elements retained in a safe condition				_	of
VVIICIC	power.	т оу	ine a	ррис	anon	<i>Oj</i>
When	Malfunctions of the control with consequent misapplication of	store	d one	rov o	r nov	vor
VVIICII	Power work holding fails, motor overspeed. Part breakage cau					
	move under residual forces causing external elements to move					
	, e	инся	peere	ary ar	n ing	
	oneration process control maintenance					
Improve	operation, process control, maintenance.					
_	ement result	8	Δ	C	W	Level
Method	ement result	S	A 1	G	W	Level
Method 1. Only	authorized person can use the machine.	S 1	A 1	G 1	W 1	Level -
Method 1. Only 2.Make	ement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine.					Level
Method 1. Only 2.Make 3.Check	ement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. before operation.					Level -
Method 1. Only 2.Make 3.Check	ement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine.			-		Level -
Method 1. Only 2.Make 3.Check	ement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. before operation.			-		Level

 NO.
 Hazards source
 S
 A
 G
 W
 Level

 File No.: TCF22041513MD
 P25/171

General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd.

	General Technology Group Dalian Mach			1	. 1	
14	Failure of the control circuit	1	1	1	1	_
Where	At or near machine					
When	Unexpected movements of machine during setting, cleaning or	mair	ıtena	nce		
-	ement result					
Method		S	A	G	W	Level
	cking before operation.	1	1	1	1	_
	e reference to the instruction manual before operate this					
machine						
3. Dail	y/periodic inspection and maintenance.					
710						1
NO.	Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Level
15	Errors of fitting	1	1	1	1	-
Where	At machine		•	,		
When	Machine elements fail or swing unexpectedly during process co	ontro	l, too	l mou	ınting	ζ,
т.	maintenance					
	ement result				**7	T
Method	.1 . 1	S	A	G	W	Level
	authorized person can use the machine.	1	1	1	1	-
	reference to the instruction manual before using this machine.					
	before operation.					
4 Perio	dic maintenance.					
1. 1 0110						
	II	C			**/	T arral
NO.	Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Level
NO. 17	Falling or ejected objects or fluids	S 1	A 1	G 1	W 1	Level
NO. 17 Where	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine	1	1	1	1	-
NO. 17 Where When	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cycle.	1 ping a	1 levice	1 e, con	trol s	-
NO. 17 Where When	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp	1 ping o	levice	1 e, con mach	trol s	- rystem
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cyement result	ing o	levice f the h	1 e, con mach	trol sine	- rystem
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method 1. Only	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cyclement result authorized person can use the machine.	1 ping o	levice	1 e, con mach	trol s	- rystem
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 6 2. Make	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cyement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine.	ing o	levice f the h	1 e, con mach	trol sine	- rystem
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 2. Make 3. Check	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cylement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. k before operation.	ing o	levice f the h	1 e, con mach	trol sine	- rystem
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 2. Make 3. Check	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cyement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine.	ing o	levice f the h	1 e, con mach	trol sine	- rystem
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 6 2. Make 3. Check 4. Period	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cycement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. k before operation. dic maintenance	oing ocle of	levice f the h	e, conmach	trol sine W 1	- Tystem Level
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 2. Make 3. Check 4. Period	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cyclement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. It before operation. dic maintenance Hazards source	1 ping a cle of	levice f the h	g, conmach	trol sine W 1	- Tystem Level
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method 1. Only of 2. Make 3. Check 4. Period	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cycement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. k before operation. dic maintenance Hazards source Loss of stability / overturning of machinery	oing ocle of	levice f the h	e, conmach	trol sine W 1	- Tystem Level
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 6 2. Make 3. Check 4. Perion NO. 18 Where	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cyclement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. It before operation. dic maintenance Hazards source Loss of stability / overturning of machinery At machine	oing ocle of	levice f the levice A 1	G 1	trol sine W 1	Level -
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method 1. Only of 2. Make 3. Check 4. Period	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cyclement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. It before operation. dic maintenance Hazards source Loss of stability / overturning of machinery At machine Unrestrained machine or machine part falls or overturns during	I ping a cle of	levice f the levice A 1	G 1	trol sine W 1	Level -
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method 1. Only of 2. Make 3. Check 4. Period NO. 18 Where When	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cycement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. k before operation. dic maintenance Hazards source Loss of stability / overturning of machinery At machine Unrestrained machine or machine part falls or overturns during process control, at heavy/unwieldy workpieces during maintenance	I ping a cle of	levice f the levice A 1	G 1	trol sine W 1	Level -
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 2. Make 3. Check 4. Perion NO. 18 Where When Improve	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cyclement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. It before operation. dic maintenance Hazards source Loss of stability / overturning of machinery At machine Unrestrained machine or machine part falls or overturns during	s I S I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	levice f the f	G I	trol sine W I ading	Level - c and
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 6 2. Make 3. Check 4. Perion NO. 18 Where When Improve Method	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cycement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. It before operation. dic maintenance Hazards source Loss of stability / overturning of machinery At machine Unrestrained machine or machine part falls or overturns during process control, at heavy/unwieldy workpieces during maintenerment result	I ping a cle of S I I I I I I I I I I I I	levice of the in A I I adding	G I	trol sine W 1 ading	Level - g and
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 6 2. Make 3. Check 4. Period NO. 18 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 6 1.	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cylement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. It before operation. dic maintenance Hazards source Loss of stability / overturning of machinery At machine Unrestrained machine or machine part falls or overturns during process control, at heavy/unwieldy workpieces during maintenance ment result authorized person can use the machine.	s I S I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	levice f the f	G I	trol sine W I ading	Level -
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 2. Make 3. Check 4. Perion NO. 18 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 2. Make 2. Make	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cylement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. It before operation. It is dic maintenance Hazards source Loss of stability / overturning of machinery At machine Unrestrained machine or machine part falls or overturns during process control, at heavy/unwieldy workpieces during maintenance ment result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine.	I ping a cle of S I I I I I I I I I I I I	levice of the in A I I adding	G I	trol sine W 1 ading	Level -
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method I. Only of 2. Make 3. Chech 4. Perion NO. 18 Where When Improve Method I. Only of 2. Make 3. Chech 3. Chech 3. Chech 3. Chech 3. Chech	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cycement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. dic maintenance Hazards source Loss of stability / overturning of machinery At machine Unrestrained machine or machine part falls or overturns during process control, at heavy/unwieldy workpieces during maintenance ment result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. Reference to the instruction manual before using this machine.	I ping a cle of S I I I I I I I I I I I I	levice of the in A I I adding	G I	trol sine W 1 ading	Level -
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method I. Only of 2. Make 3. Chech 4. Perion NO. 18 Where When Improve Method I. Only of 2. Make 3. Chech 3. Chech 3. Chech 3. Chech 3. Chech	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cylement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. It before operation. It is dic maintenance Hazards source Loss of stability / overturning of machinery At machine Unrestrained machine or machine part falls or overturns during process control, at heavy/unwieldy workpieces during maintenance ment result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine.	I ping a cle of S I I I I I I I I I I I I	levice of the in A I I adding	G I	trol sine W 1 ading	Level -
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 2. Make 3. Check 4. Perion NO. 18 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 2. Make 3. Check 4. Perion Method 1. Only 4. Perion Method 1. Only 5. Make 4. Perion	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cylement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. It is before operation. dic maintenance Hazards source Loss of stability / overturning of machinery At machine Unrestrained machine or machine part falls or overturns during process control, at heavy/unwieldy workpieces during mainteness ement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. It is before operation. dic maintenance	I ping a cle of S I s I ng loc ance S I	levice of the in A 1 1 adding A 1	G 1 /unlos	trol sine W 1 ading	Level - g and Level -
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 6 2. Make 3. Chech 4. Period NO. 18 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 6 2. Make 3. Chech 4. Period NO. No.	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cylement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. It before operation. dic maintenance Hazards source Loss of stability / overturning of machinery At machine Unrestrained machine or machine part falls or overturns during process control, at heavy/unwieldy workpieces during maintenerment result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. It before operation. dic maintenance Hazards source Hazards source	I pring a color of sing local ance S I S I	A A A A A A A	G I G I	trol sine W 1 ading	Level -
NO. 17 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 2. Make 3. Check 4. Perion NO. 18 Where When Improve Method 1. Only 2. Make 3. Check 4. Perion Method 1. Only 4. Perion Method 1. Only 5. Make 4. Perion	Falling or ejected objects or fluids At or near machine Ejection of machine parts, workpiece or tools caused by clamp failures or collision due to data errors during the operating cylement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. It is before operation. dic maintenance Hazards source Loss of stability / overturning of machinery At machine Unrestrained machine or machine part falls or overturns during process control, at heavy/unwieldy workpieces during mainteness ement result authorized person can use the machine. reference to the instruction manual before using this machine. It is before operation. dic maintenance	I pring a color of the second	A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A	G 1 G 1 G 1 G 1	trol sine W 1 ading	Level - Level - Level - Level -

File No.: TCF22041513MD P26/171

When	Ejection or spillage of metal working fluids and lubricants during workpiece load/unload,							
	setting, process control and maintenance work at heights work to replenish fluids (e.g.							
	lubricants)							
Improve	ement result							
Method		S	A	G	W	Level		
1. Only	authorized person can use the machine.	1	1	1	1	-		
2. Make	reference to the instruction manual before using this machine.							
3. Checi	k before operation.							
4. Perio	dic maintenance							

NO.	Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Level
25.1	Unauthorized start-up/use	1	1	1	1	-
Where	Control system					
When	Operation, adjustment or maintenance of the machine					
Improve	ement result					
Method		S	A	G	W	Level
1. Alwa	ays starting the machine by training/authorized persons.	1	1	1	1	-
2. Duri	ing adjustment or maintenance, put a warning nameplate near					
the work	king area.					
3. Lock	the power switch of the machine.					

NO.	Hazards source	S	A	G	W	Level
26	Insufficient instructions for the driver/operator	1	1	1	1	_
Where	Whole machine					
When	When Installation, assembly/disassembly, operation, adjustment or maintenance of the machine					achine
Improve	Improvement result					
Method			A	G	W	Level
1. Edit the instruction manual in conformity with those requirement of		1	1	1	1	-
Machinery Directive and EN ISO 12100: 2010 standard.						
2. Each	h machine accompanied with a complete instruction manual.					

2. EN ISO 12100:2010 part 6-7

	EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

6	Risk reduction		P
6.1	General		P
	The objective of risk reduction can be achieved by the elimination of hazards, or by separately or simultaneously reducing each of the two elements that determine the associated risk: -severity of harm from the hazard under consideration; - probability of occurrence of that harm. All protective measures intended for reaching this objective shall be applied in the following sequence, referred to as the three-step method (see also Figures 1 and 2).	Appropriate machine design has been performed by the manufacturer	P
6.2	Inherently safe design measures	•	P

File No.: TCF22041513MD P27/171

	EN ISO 12100:2010	
Clause	Requirement-Test Result-Remark	Verdic
6.2.1	General	P
	Inherently safe design measures are the first and most Appropriate machine important step in the risk reduction process because protective measures inherent to the characteristics of the machine are likely to remain effective, whereas experience has shown that even well-designed safeguarding may fail or be violated and information for use may not be followed.	P
	Inherently safe design measures are achieved by Appropriate machine avoiding hazards or reducing risks by a suitable choice of design features of the machine itself and/or interaction between the exposed persons and the machine. NOTE See 6.3 for safeguarding and complementary measures that can be used to achieve the risk reduction objectives in the case where inherently safe design measures are not sufficient (see 6.1 for the three-step method).	P
6.2.2	Consideration of geometrical factors and physical aspects	P
6.2.2.1	Geometrical factors	P
0.2.2.1		1
	Such factors include the following.	-
	a) The form of machinery is designed to maximize direct visibility of the working areas and hazard zones from the control position — reducing blind spots, for example — and choosing and locating means of indirect vision where necessary (mirrors, etc.) so as to take into account the characteristics of human vision, particularly when safe operation requires permanent direct control by the operator, for example: -the traveling and working area of mobile machines; -the zone of movement of lifted loads or of the carrier of machinery for lifting persons; -the area of contact of the tool of a hand-held or hand-guided machine with the material being worked. The design of the machine shall be such that, from the main control position, the operator is able to ensure that there are no exposed persons in the danger zones.	P
	b) The form and the relative location of the mechanical By increasing the	P
	components parts: for instance arushing and shearing minimum gan	1

components parts: for instance, crushing and shearing minimum gap

under consideration can enter the gap safely, or by the gap.

reducing the gap so that no part of the body can enter it

hazards are avoided by increasing the minimum gap between the moving between the moving parts, such that the part of the body parts or by reducing

EN ISO 12100:2010

(see ISO 13854 and ISO 13857).

EN ISO 12100:2010				
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict	
	c) Avoiding sharp edges and corners, protruding parts: in so far as their purpose allows, accessible parts of the machinery shall have no sharp edges, no sharp angles, no rough surfaces, no protruding parts likely to cause injury, and no openings which can "trap" parts of the body or clothing. In particular, sheet metal edges shall be deburred, flanged or trimmed, and open ends of tubes which can cause a "trap" shall be capped.	sharp angles, no rough surfaces, no protruding parts.	P	
	d) The form of the machine is designed so as to achieve a suitable working position and provide accessible manual controls (actuators).		P	
6.2.2.2	Physical aspects		P	
	Such aspects include the following:		-	
	a) limiting the actuating force to a sufficiently low value so that the actuated part does not generate a mechanical hazard;	The actuating force has been limited to be a sufficiently low value.	P	
	b)limiting the mass and/or velocity of the movable elements, and hence their kinetic energy;		P	
	c) limiting the emissions by acting on the characteristics of the source using measures for reducing: 1) noise emission at source (see ISO/TR 11688-1), 2) the emission of vibration at source, such as redistribution or addition of mass and changes of process parameters [for example, frequency and/or amplitude of movements (for hand-held and hand-guided machinery, see CR 1030-1)], 3) the emission of hazardous substances, including the use of less hazardous substances or dust-reducing processes (granules instead of powders, milling instead of grinding), and 4) radiation emissions, including, for example, avoiding the use of hazardous radiation sources, limiting the power of radiation to the lowest level sufficient for the proper functioning of the machine, designing the source so that the beam is concentrated on the target, increasing the distance between the source and the operator or providing for remote operation of the machinery [measures for reducing emission of non-ionizing radiation are given in 6.3.4.5 (see also EN 12198-1 and EN 12198-3)].		P	
6.2.3	Taking into account the general technical knowledge regarding machine design		P	
	This general technical knowledge can be derived from technical specifications for design (e.g. standards, design codes, calculation rules). These should be used to cover:		-	

	EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	 a) mechanical stresses such as stress limitation by implementation of correct calculation, construction and fastening methods as regards, e.g. bolted assemblies, welded assemblies stress limitation by overload prevention, (e.g. "fusible" plugs, pressure-limiting valve, breakage points, torque-limiting devices); avoiding fatigue in elements under variable stresses (notably cyclic stresses); static and dynamic balancing of rotating elements; 	The appropriate technical knowledge of mechanical has been taken into account.	P
	b) materials and their properties such as - resistance to corrosion, aging, abrasion and wear; - hardness, ductility, brittleness; - homogeneity; - toxicity; - flammability.	The materials have been treated by appropriate methods.	P
	c) emission values for : - noise; - vibration; - hazardous substances; - radiation.		P
	When the reliability of particular components or assemblies is critical for safety (e.g. ropes, chains, lifting accessories for lifting loads or persons), stress values shall be multiplied by appropriate working coefficients.	Appropriate working coefficients have been taken into account during design and calculation.	P
6.2.4	Choice of an appropriate technology	carculation.	N
	One or more hazards can be eliminated or risks reduced by the choice of the technology to be used in certain applications, e.g.:		-
	a) on machines intended for use in explosive atmospheres: - fully pneumatic or hydraulic control system and machine actuators; - "intrinsically safe" electrical equipment (see IEC 60079-11)		N
	b) for particular products to be processed such as a solvent: equipment assuring that the temperature will remain far below the flash point.		N
	c) alternative equipment to avoid high noise level, e.g.: - electrical instead of pneumatic equipment - in certain conditions, water cutting instead of		N

	EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	mechanical equipment.		
6.2.5	Applying the principle of the positive mechanical action		N
	Positive mechanical action is achieved when a moving mechanical component inevitably moves another component along with it, either by direct contact or via rigid elements. An example of this is positive opening operation of switching devices in an electrical circuit (see IEC 60947-5-1 and ISO 14119).		N
6.2.6	Provisions for stability		P
	Machines shall be designed to have sufficient stability to allow them to be used safely in their specified conditions of use.	These machines have been designed to have sufficient stability.	P
	Factors to be taken into account include		-
	- geometry of the base;	The factor has been taken into account during design.	P
	- weight distribution, including loading;	The factor has been taken into account during design.	P
	- dynamic forces due to movements of parts of the machine, of the machine itself, or of elements held by the machine which may result in an overturning moment;	The factor has been taken into account	P
	- vibration	The factor has been taken into account during design.	P
	- oscillations of the center of gravity;		N
	- characteristics of the supporting surface in case of traveling or installation on different sites (e.g. ground conditions, slope);		P
	- external forces (e.g. wind pressure, manual forces)	The factor has been taken into account during design.	P
		TT1 0 1 1	-

	rigid elements. An example of this is positive opening operation of switching devices in an electrical circuit	l .	
	(see IEC 60947-5-1 and ISO 14119).		
5.2.6	Provisions for stability		P
	Machines shall be designed to have sufficient stability to allow them to be used safely in their specified conditions of use.		P
	Factors to be taken into account include		-
	- geometry of the base;	The factor has been taken into account during design.	P
	- weight distribution, including loading;	The factor has been taken into account during design.	Р
	- dynamic forces due to movements of parts of the machine, of the machine itself, or of elements held by the machine which may result in an overturning moment;	taken into account	P
	- vibration	The factor has been taken into account during design.	P
	- oscillations of the center of gravity;		N
	- characteristics of the supporting surface in case of traveling or installation on different sites (e.g. ground conditions, slope);		P
	- external forces (e.g. wind pressure, manual forces)	The factor has been taken into account during design.	P
	Stability shall be considered in all phases of the life of the machine, including handling, traveling, installation, use, decommissioning and dismantling.	The factor has been	P
	Other protective measures for stability relevant to safeguarding are given in 6.3.2.6	Please see the related clause.	P
5.2.7	Provision for maintainability		P
	When designing a machine, the following maintainability factors shall be taken into account:		-
	- accessibility, taking into account the environment and	These factors have been taken into	P

	EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
		design.	
	- ease of handling, taking into account human	The factor has been	P
	capabilities;	taken into account	
		during design.	
	- limitation of the number of special tools and	The factor has been	P
	equipment;	taken into account	
6.2.8	Observing ergonomic principles	during design.	P
0.2.8		Annanriota	P
	Ergonomic principles shall be taken into account in		P
	designing machinery to reduce mental or physical stress	have been taken into	
	and strain of the operator.	account in designing	
		machinery.	
	These principles shall be considered when allocating	· · ·	P
		been taken into	
	automation) in the basic design.	account during	
	dutonation) in the custe design.	allocating functions	
		to operator and	
		machine.	
	Account shall be taken of body sizes likely to be found		P
	in the intended user population, strengths and postures,		
	movement amplitudes, frequency of cyclic actions (see	account during	
	ISO 10075 and ISO 10075-2)	design.	
	All elements of the "operator-machine" interface such as	All arrangement and	P
	controls, signaling or data display elements, shall be	design of manual	
	designed to be easily understood so that clear and	controls have been	
	unambiguous interaction between the operator and the	checked in	
	machine is possible.(see EN 614-1, ISO 6385, EN 13861	compliance with.	
	and IEC 61310-1)		
	Designer's attention is especially drawn to following		_
	ergonomic aspects of machine design		
		Strangful mostumes and	D
	a) Avoiding stressful postures and movements during		P
	use of the machine (e.g. by providing facilities to adjust	use of the machine	
	the machine to suit the various operators).	have been avoided.	
	b) Designing machines, and more especially hand-held		P
	and mobile machines to enable them to be operated		
	easily taking into account human effort, actuation of		
	controls and hand, arm and leg anatomy.	convenient	
		movement.	
	c) Limit as far as possible noise, vibration and thermal	This machine has	P
	effects such as extreme temperatures.	been designed with	
	DA 1111 1 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4	low noise, vibration.	D
	d) Avoid linking the operator's working rhythm to an	This situation has	P
	automatic succession of cycles.	been avoided.	

EN ISO 12100:2010			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	e) Providing local lighting on or in the machine for the		N
	illumination of the working area and of adjusting,		
	setting-up, and frequent maintenance zones when the		
	design features of the machine and /or its guards render		
	the ambient lighting inadequate. Flicker, dazzling,		
	shadows and stroboscopic effects shall be avoided if		
	they can cause a risk. If the position of the lighting		
	source has to be adjusted, its location shall be such that it		
	does not cause any risk to persons making the		
	adjustment.		
	f) Select, locate and identify manual controls (actuators)		_
	so that		
	1 7	Clearly visible and	P
	appropriately illustrate where the establish (see e.g.)	appropriately marked	
	- they can be safely operated without hesitation or loss of		P
	time and without ambiguity (e.g. a standard layout of	controls.	
	controls reduces the possibility of error when an operator	See the photos.	
	changes from a machine to another one of similar type		
	having the same pattern of operation)		
	- their location(for push-buttons) and their movement		P
	(for levers and handwheels) are consistent with their	consistent with their	
	effect (see fire 01310-3)	effect.	
	- their operation cannot cause additional risk		P
	Where a control is designed and constructed to perform		N
	several different actions, namely where there is no		
	one-to-one correspondence (e.g. keyboards), the action		
	to be performed shall be clearly displayed and subject to		
	confirmation where necessary.		
	Controls shall be so arranged that their layout, travel and		P
	resistance to operation are compatible with the action to	ergonomic principles	
	be performed, taking account of ergonomic principles.		
	Constraints due to the necessary or foreseeable use of		P
	personal protective equipment(such as footwear,	footwear	
	gloves)shall be taken into account.		
	g) Select, design and locate indicators, dials and visual		_
	display units so that		
	- they fit within the parameters and characteristics of		P
	human perception		
	- information displayed can be detected, identified and		P
	interpreted conveniently, i.e. long lasting, distinct,	displayed comply	
	unambiguous and understandable with respect to the	with this requirement.	

	EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Reillark	vertuict
	operator's requirements and the intended use;		
	- the operator is able to perceive them form the control position		Р
6.2.9	Preventing electrical hazard		P
	For the design of the electrical equipment of machines EN 60204-1 gives general provisions, especially in clause 6 for protection against electric shock.	See the test report of EN 60204-1	P
	For requirements related to specific machines, see corresponding IEC standards (e.g. series of IEC 61029, IEC 60745, IEC 60335).		N
6.2.10	Pneumatic and hydraulic hazards		P
	Pneumatic and hydraulic equipment of machinery shall be designed so that :		-
	- the maximum rated pressure cannot be exceeded in the circuits (e.g. by means of pressure limiting devices)		Р
	- no hazard results from pressure surges or rises,		P
	pressure losses or drops or losses of vacuum;		
	- no hazardous fluid jet or sudden hazardous movement of the hose (whiplash)results from leakage or component failures;		P
	- air receivers, air reservoirs or similar vessels (e.g. in gas loaded accumulators) comply with the design rules for these elements;		Р
	- air elements of the equipment, and especially pipes and hoses, be protected against harmful external effects;		P
	- as far as possible, reservoirs and similar vessels (e.g. in gas loaded accumulators) are automatically depressurized when isolating the machine from its power supply (see 6.3.5.4) and, if it is not possible, means are provided for their isolation, local depressurizing and pressure indication (see also ISO 14118:2000, clause 5)		P
	- all elements which remain under pressure after isolation of the machine from its power supply be provided with clearly identified exhaust devices, and a warning label drawing attention to the necessity of depressurizing those elements before any setting or maintenance activity on the machine. See also ISO 4413 and ISO4414		P
6.2.11	Applying inherently safe design measures to control system		P
6.2.11.1	General		P
	The design measures of the control system shall be	T 1 .1 .C 1 .	P

EN ISO 12100:2010			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	chosen so that their safety-related performance provides a sufficient amount of risk reduction (see ISO 13849-1 or IEC 62061)	measures to control system have applied.	
	The correct design of machine control systems can avoid unforeseen and potentially hazardous machine behaviour.	Inherently safe design measures to control system have applied.	P
	Typical causes of hazardous machine behavior are:		-
	- an unsuitable design or modification (accidental or deliberate) of the control system logic;	No this kind of hazard in this machine	N
	- a temporary or permanent defect or a failure of one or several components of the control system;		N
	- a variation or a failure in the power supply of the control system;	No this kind of hazard in this machine	N
	- inappropriate selection, design and location of the control devices;	No this kind of hazard in this machine	N
	Typical examples of hazardous machine behaviour are:		-
	- unintended/unexpected start-up(see ISO 14118)	No this kind of hazard in this machine	P
	- uncontrolled speed change;		P
	- failure to stop moving parts;		P
	- dropping or ejection of a mobile part of the machine or of a workpiece clamped by the machine;		P
	- machine action resulting from inhibition (defeating or failure) of protective devices	No this kind of hazard in this machine	N
	In order to prevent hazardous machine behaviour and to achieve safety functions, the design of control systems shall comply with the principles and methods presented in this subclause 6.2.11 and in 6.2.12.	See the related clause	P
	These principles and methods shall be applied singly or in combination as appropriate to the circumstances (see ISO 13849-1 and EN 60204-1 and IEC 62061).	See the test report of EN 60204-1	Р
	Control systems shall be designed to enable the operator to interact with the machine safely and easily; this requires one or several of the following solutions;		P
	- systematic analysis of start and stop conditions;	Systematic analysis have been applied.	P
	- provision for specific operating modes (e.g. start-up after normal stop, restart after cycle interruption or after emergency stop, removal of the workpieces contained in	have been provided.	Р

Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdic
Claube	requirement rest	result Remark	, craic
	the machine, operation of a part of the machine in case		
	of a failure of a machine element)		
	- clear display of the faults;		N
	- measures to prevent accidental generation of		P
	unexpected start commands (e.g. shrouded start device)	devices are provided.	
	likely to cause dangerous machine behaviour (see ISO		
	14118:2000, figure 1)		
	- maintained stop commands(e.g. interlock) to prevent		P
	restarting that could result in dangerous machine	complied with.	
	behaviour (see ISO 14118:2000, figure 1) An assembly of machines may be divided into several		N
	zones for emergency stopping, for stopping as a result of		IN .
	protective devices and/or for isolation and energy		
	dissipation.		
	The different zones shall be clearly defined and it shall		N
	be obvious which parts of the machine belong to which		11
	zone.		
	Likewise it shall be obvious which control devices (e.g.		N
	emergency stop devices, supply disconnecting		1
	devices)and/or protective devices belong to which zone.		
	The interfaces between zones shall be designed such that		N
	no function in one zone creates hazards in another zone		1
	which has been stopped for an intervention.		
	Control systems shall be designed to limit the		N
	movements of parts of the machinery, the machine itself,		
	or workpieces and/or loads held by the machinery, to the		
	safe design parameters(e.g. range, speed, acceleration,		
	deceleration, load capacity). Allowance shall be made		
	for dynamic effects (e.g. the swinging of loads).		
	For example:		-
	- the traveling speed of mobile pedestrian controlled		N
	machinery other than remote-controlled shall be		
	compatible with walking speed.		
	- the range, speed, acceleration and deceleration of		N
	movements of the person-carrier and carrying vehicle for		
	lifting persons shall be limited to non-hazardous values,		
	taking into account the total reaction time of the operator and the machine.		
	- the range of movements of parts of machinery for		N
	lifting loads shall be kept within specified limits.		
	When machinery is designed to use synchronously		N
	different elements which can also be used independently		
	the control system shall be designed to prevent risks due		

EN ISO 12100:2010

	EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	to lack of synchronization.	
6.2.11.2	Starting of internal power source/switching on an	P
	external power supply	
	The starting of an internal power source or switching-on of an external power supply shall not result in a starting of working hazardous situation. For example: -starting the internal combustion engine shall not lead to movement of a mobile machine; -connection to mains electricity supply shall not result in the starting of working parts of a machine. See EN	P
	60204-1:2006, 7.5 (see also Annexes A and B).	
6.2.11.3	Starting/stopping of a mechanism	P
	The primary action for starting or accelerating the movement of a mechanism should be performed by application or increase of voltage or fluid pressure, or, if account during binary logic elements are considered, by passage from state 0 to state 1(if state 1 represents the highest energy state)	P
	The primary action for stopping or slowing down should be performed by removal or reduction of voltage or fluid of this machine pressure, or, if binary logic elements are considered, by passage from state 1 to state 0 (if state 1 represents the highest energy state).	P
	When, in order for the operator to maintain permanent No such situation control of deceleration, this principle is not observed (e.g. a hydraulic braking device of a self-propelled mobile machine), the machine shall be equipped with a means of slowing and stopping in case of failure of the main braking system	N
5.2.11.4	Restart after power interruption	P
	If it may generate a hazard, the spontaneous restart of a machine when it is re-energized after power interruption shall be prevented (e.g. by use of a self-maintained relay, contactor or valve).	P
6.2.11.5	Interruption of power supply	P
	Machinery shall be designed to prevent hazardous situations resulting from interruption or excessive fluctuation of the power supply. At least the following requirements shall be met:	P
	- the stopping function of the machinery shall remain;	P
	- all devices whose permanent operation is required for safety shall operation an effective way to maintain safety (e.g. locking, clamping devices, cooling or heating devices, power-assisted steering of self-propelled mobile	Р

	EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	<u>-</u>	
	machinery);	
	- parts of machinery or workpieces and/or loads held by	N
	machinery which are liable to move as a result of	11
	potential energy shall be retained for the time necessary	
	to allow them to be safely lowered.	
5.2.11.6	Use of automatic monitoring	P
0.2.11.0	Automatic monitoring is intended to ensure that a safety	P
		Г
	function(s) implemented by a protective measure do(es)	
	not fail to be performed if the ability of a component or	
	an element to perform its function is diminished, or if	
	the process conditions are changed in such a way that	
	hazards are generated.	D
	Automatic monitoring either detects a fault immediately	P
	or carries out periodic checks so that a fault is detected before the next demand upon the safety function.	
	In either case, the protective measure can be initiated	P
	immediately or delayed until a specific event occurs (e.g.	
	the beginning of the machine cycle.) The protective	
	measures may be , e.g.:	
	- the stopping of the hazardous process;	P
	- preventing the re-start of this process after the first stop	P
	following the failure;	1
	- the triggering of an alarm	P
5.2.11.7	Safety functions implemented by programmable	P
0.2.11./	electronic control systems	Г
.2.11.7.1	General	P
	A control system including programmable electronic	P
	equipment (e.g. programmable controllers) can be used	
	to implement safety functions t machinery.	
	Where a programmable electronic control system is used	P
	it is necessary to consider its performance requirements	
	in relation to the requirements for the safety functions.	
	The design of the programmable electronic control	P
	system shall be such that the probability of random	
	hardware failures and the likelihood of systematic	
	failures that can adversely affect the performance of the	
	safety-related control function(s) are sufficiently low.	
	Where a programmable electronic control system	P
	performs a monitoring function, the system behaviour on	
	detection of a fault shall be considered (see also IEC	
	61508 series for further guidance)	
	The programmable electronic control system should be	P
	installed and validated to ensure that the specified	

	EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	performance (e.g. safety integrity level (SIL) in IEC		
	61508 series) for each safety function has been achieved.		
	Validation comprises testing an analysis (e.g. static,		P
	dynamic or failure analysis) to show that all parts		
	interact correctly to perform the safety function and that		
	unintended functions do not occur.		
6.2.11.7.2	Hardware aspects		P
	The hardware (including e.g. sensors, actuators, logic		P
	solvers) shall be selected (and/or designed) and installed		
	to meet both the functional and performance		
	requirements of the safety function(s) to be performed,		
	in particular, by means of:		
	- architectural constraints (e.g. the configuration of the		P
	system, its ability to tolerate faults, its behaviour on		
	detection of a fault);		P
	- selecting (and/or designing) equipment and devices with an appropriate probability of dangerous random		P
	hardware failure;		
	-Incorporating measures and techniques within the		P
	hardware to avoid systematic failures and control		
	systematic faults.		
6.2.11.7.3	Software aspects		P
	The software (including internal operating software (or		P
	system software) and application software) shall be		
	designed so as to satisfy the performance specification		
	for the safety functions (see also IEC 61508-3)		
	Application software		P
	Application software should not be re-programmable by		P
	the user.		
	This may be achieved by use of embedded software in a non re-programmable memory (e.g. micro-controller,		P
	application specific integrated circuit (ASIC)		
	When the application requires reprogramming by the		P
	user, the access o the software dealing with safety		1
	functions should be restricted e.g. by:		
	- locks;		
	- passwords for the authorized persons		
6.2.11.8	Principles relating to manual control		P
	,	See the photo.	P
	according to the relevant ergonomic principles given in		
	6.2.8		
	b) A stop control device shall be placed near each start		P
	control device. Where the start/stop function is		
	performed by means of a hold-to-run control, a separate stop control device shall be provided when a risk can		
	result from the hold-to-run control device failing to		
	Itali all all all to tall collator device failing to		

	EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	deliver a stop command when released.		_
	c) Manual controls shall be located out of reach of the		P
	danger zones (see IEC 61310-3), except for certain		
	controls where, of necessity, they are located within a	_	
	danger zone, such as emergency stop or teach pendant.d) Whenever possible, control devices and control	Zones.	P
	positions shall be located so that the operator is able to		1
	observe the working area or hazard zone.	working area or	
	deserve the westing used of humana desire.	hazard zone.	
	The driver of a ride-on mobile machine shall be able to		N
	actuate all control devices required to operate the	machine	
	machine from the driving position, except for functions		
	which can be controlled more safely from other		
	positions.		
	On machinery intended for lifting persons, controls for		P
	lifting and lowering and, if appropriate, for moving the		
	carrier, shall generally be located in the carrier.		
	If safe operation requires controls to be situated outside		
	the carrier, the operator in the carrier shall be provided with the means of preventing hazardous movements.		
			P
	e) if it is possible to start the same hazardous element by means of several controls, the control circuit shall be so		P
	arranged that only one control is effective at a given		
	time. This applies especially to machines which can be		
	manually controlled by means among others of a		
	portable control unit (teach pendant, for instance), with		
	which the operator may enter danger zones.		
	f) Control actuators shall be designed or guarded so that		P
	their effect, where a risk is involved, cannot occur		
	without intentional operation (see ISO 9355-1 and ISO		
	447)		
	g) For machine functions whose safe operation depends		N
	on permanent, direct control by the operator, measures		
	shall be taken to ensure the presence of the operator at		
	the control position, e.g. by the design and location of control devices.		
	h) For cableless control an automatic stop shall be	No cableless control	N
	performed when correct control signals are not received,		1
	including loss of communication (see EN 60204-1)		
6.2.11.9	Control mode for setting, teaching, process changeover,		P
	fault-finding, cleaning or maintenance		
	Where, for setting, teaching, process changeover,		P
	fault-finding, cleaning or maintenance of machinery, a		
	guard has to displaced or removed and/or a protective		
	device has to be disabled, and where it is necessary for		
	the purpose of these operations for the machinery or part		
	of the machinery to be put in operation, safety of the		
	operator shall be achieved using a specific control mode		

		EN ISO 12100:2010	
Verdict	Result-Remark	Requirement-Test	Clause
	Result-Remark	Requirement-Test	Clause

	which simultaneously: - disables all other control modes;	P
	·	
	- permits operation of the hazardous elements only by continuous actuation of an enabling device, a hold-to-run	P
	control device or a two-hand control device;	
	- permits operation of the hazardous elements only in	P
	reduced risk conditions (e.g. reduced speed, reduced	
	power/force, step-by-step operation, e.g. with a limited	
	movement control device)	
	prevents any operation of hazardous functions by	P
	voluntary or involuntary action on the machine's sensors.	
	This control mode shall be associated with one or more	P
	of following measures:	
	- restriction of access to the danger zone as far as	P
	possible.	D
	- emergency stop control within immediate reach of the	P
	operator; - portable control unit (teach pendant) and/or local	P
	controls allowing sight of the controlled elements. (see	1
	EN 60204-1:2006, 9.2.4)	
5.2.11.10	Selection of control and operating modes	P
	If machinery has been designed and built to allow for its	P
	use in several control or operating modes requiring	
	different protective measures and/or work procedures	
	(e.g. to allow for adjustment, setting, maintenance,	
	inspection), it shall be fitted with a mode selector which	
	can be locked in each position.	
	Each position of the selector shall be clearly identifiable	P
	and shall exclusively allow one control or operating	
	mode.	
	The selector may be replaced by another selection means	P
	which restricts the use of certain functions of the machinery to certain categories of operators (e.g. access	
	codes for certain numerically controlled functions).	
6.2.11.11	Applying measures achieve electromagnetic	N
.	compatibility (EMC)	
	For guidance on electromagnetic compatibility, see EN	N
	60204-1, and IEC 61000-6 series.	
5.2.11.12	Provision of diagnostic systems to aid fault-finding	P
	Diagnostic systems to aid fault finding should be	P
	included in the control system so that there is no need to	
	disable any protective measures.	
5.2.12	Minimizing the probability of failure of safety functions	P
5.2.12.1	General	P
	Safety of machinery is not only dependent on the	P
	reliability of the control systems but also on the	
	reliability of all parts of the machine. The continued	

	EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	<u> </u>	
		1
	operation of the safety functions is essential for the safe	
(0 10 0	use of the machine. This can be achieved by :	
6.2.12.2	Use of reliable components	P
	"Reliable components" means components which are Reliable components capable of withstanding all disturbances and stresses have been used. associated with the usage of the equipment in the conditions of intended use (including the environmental conditions), for the period of time or the number of operations fixed for the use, with a low probability of failures generating a hazardous malfunctioning of the	P
	machine. Components shall be selected taking into account all factors mentioned above(see also 6.213)	
6.2.12.3	Use of "oriented failure mode" components	P
<u> </u>	"Oriented failure mode" components or systems are those in which the predominant failure mode is known in advance and which can be used so that such a failure leads to a non-hazardous alteration of the machine function.	P
	The use of such components should always be considered, particularly in cases where redundancy is (see 6.2.12.4) not employed.	P
6.2.12.4	Duplication (or redundancy) of components or subsystems	P
	In the design of safety-related parts of the machine, No duplication (or duplication (or redundancy) of components may be used redundancy) of so that, if one component fails, another component (or components other components) continue(s) to perform its (their) function, thereby ensuring that the safety function remains available.	N
	In order to allow the proper action to be initiated, Be preferably component failure shall be preferably detected by detected by automatic automatic monitoring (see 6.2.11.6) or in some monitoring circumstances by regular inspection,	P
	provided that the inspection interval is shorter than the expected lifetime of the components.	P
	Diversity of design and/or technology can be used to avoid common cause failures (e.g. from electromagnetic disturbance) or common mode failures.	P
6.2.13	Limiting exposure to hazards through reliability of equipment	P
	Increased reliability of all component parts of machinery This requirement is reduces the frequency of incidents requiring complied with. rectification, thereby reducing exposure to hazards.	P
	This applies to power systems (operative part) as well as to control systems, to safety functions as well as to other functions of machinery. This applies to power systems (operative part) as well as to other complied with.	P
	Safety-critical components (as e.g. certain sensors) with Safety-critical a known reliability shall be used.	P

File No.: TCF22041513MD

EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test Result-Remark	Verdict
Clause	Requirement Test Result Remain	Verdict
	The elements of guards and of protective services shall be particularly reliable, as their failure can expose persons to hazards, and also as poor reliability would encourage attempts to defeat them.	P
6.2.14	Limiting exposure to hazards through mechanization or automation of loading(feeding) /unloading (removal) operations	N
	Mechanization and automation of machine loading/unloading operations and more generally of handling operations (of workpieces, materials, substances) limit the risk generated by these operations by reducing the exposure of persons to hazards at the operating points.	N
	Automation can be achieved e.g. by robots, handling devices, transfer mechanisms, air blast equipment.	N
	Mechanization can be achieved, e.g. by feeding slides, push rods, hand-operated indexing tables.	N
	While automatic feeding and removal devices have much to offer in preventing accidents to machine operators, they can create danger when any faults are being rectified.	Z
	Care shall be taken to ensure that the use of these devices does not introduce further hazards (e.g. trapping, crushing) between the devices and parts of the machine or workpieces/materials being processed.	N
	Suitable safeguards (see 6.3) shall be provided if this cannot be ensured.	N
	Automatic feeding and removal devices with their own control systems and the control systems of the associated machine shall be interconnected after thoroughly studying how all safety functions are performed in all control and operation modes of the whole equipment.	N
6.2.15	Limiting exposure to hazards through location of the setting and maintenance points outside of danger zones.	P
	The need for access to danger zones shall be minimized by locating maintenance, lubrication and setting points outside these zones.	P
6.3	Safeguarding and complementary protective measures	P
6.3.1	General	P
	Guards and protective devices shall be used to protect Appropriate guards persons whenever inherently safe design does not and protective reasonably make it possible either to remove hazards or devices have been to sufficiently reduce risks. Complementary protective used to protect measures involving additional equipment (e.g. persons emergency stop equipment) may have to be implemented.	P
	Certain safeguards may be used to avoid exposure to fixed guard is used. more than one hazard (e.g. a fixed guard preventing	P/3/171

EN ISO 12100:2010			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	1		
	access to a zone where a mechanical hazard is present		
	being used to reduce noise level and collect toxic		
	emissions)		
6.3.2	Selection and implementation of guards and protective		P
	devices		
6.3.2.1	General		P
	This subclause gives guidelines for the selection and the	Fixed guard	P
	implementation of guards and protective devices the		
	primary purpose of which is to protect persons against		
	hazard generated by moving parts, according to the		
	nature of those parts (see figure 4) and to the need for		
	access to the danger zone(s).		
	The exact choice of a safeguard for a particular machine		P
	shall be made on the basis of the risk assessment for that		
	machine.		
	In selecting an appropriate safeguard for a particular		P
	type of machinery or hazard zone, it shall be borne in		
	mind that a fixed guard is simple and shall be used		
	where access of an operator to the danger zone is not		
	required during normal operation (operation without any		
	malfunction) of the machinery.		
	As the need for frequency of access increase this		N
	inevitably leads to the fixed guard not being replaced.		
	This requires the use of an alternative protective measure		N
	(movable interlocking guard, sensitive protective		
	equipment.)		
	A combination of safeguards may sometimes be		N
	required. For example, where, in conjunction with a		
	fixed guard, a mechanical loading (feeding) device is		
	used to feed a workpiece into a machine, thereby		
	removing the need for access to the primary hazard zone,		
	a trip device may be required to protect against the		
	secondary drawing-in or shearing hazard between the		
	mechanical loading (feeding) device, when reachable,		
	and the fixed guard.		
	Consideration shall be given to the enclosure of control	This requirement has	P
	positions or intervention zones to provide combined	_	
	protection against several hazards which may include:	consideration.	
	- hazards from falling or ejected objects (e.g. falling		P
	object protection structure)		
	- emission hazards (e.g. protection against noise,		P
	vibration, radiation, harmful substances)		
	- hazards due to the environment (e.g. protection against		P
	heat, cold, foul weather)		
	- hazards due to tipping over or rolling over of	No such hazards exist	N
	machinery (e.g. roll-over or tip-over protection structure)		
	The design of such enclosed work stations (e.g. cabs and		N
	cabins) shall take into account ergonomic principles		
	, , principles	1	D44/171

	EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

			-
	concerning visibility, lighting, atmospheric conditions,		
	access, posture.		
6.3.2.2	Where access to the hazard zone is not required during		P
	normal operation		
	Where access to the hazard zone is not required during		-
	normal operation of the machinery, safeguard should be		
	selected from the following:		
	a) fixed guard (see also ISO 14120)	Fixed guards are	P
	I	provided.	
	b) interlocking guard with or without guard locking (see		N
	also 6.3.3.2.3, ISO 14119, ISO 14120);		
	c) self-closing guard (see ISO 14120:2002, 3.3.2)		P
	d) sensitive protective equipment, e.g. electro-sensitive		N
	protective equipment (see IEC 61496) or pressure		
	sensitive mat (see ISO 13856)		
5.3.2.3	Where access to the hazard zone is required during		N
	normal operation		
	Where access to the hazard zone is required during		-
	normal operation of the machinery, safeguards should		
	be selected from the following:		
	a) interlocking guard with or without guard locking (see		N
	also ISO 14119, ISO 14120 and 6.3.3.2.3 of this		
	standard);		
	b) sensitive protective equipment, e.g electro-sensitive		N
	protective equipment (see IEC 61496)		
	c) adjustable guard;		N
	d) self-closing guard (see ISO 14120:2002, 3.3.2)		N
	e) two-hand control device (see ISO 13851)		N
	f) interlocking guard with a start function (control		N
	guard) (see 6.3.3.2.5 of this standard)		
5.3.2.4	Where access to the hazard zone is required for machine		N
	setting, teaching, process changeover, fault finding,		
	cleaning or maintenance.		
	As far as possible, machines shall be designed so that the		N
	safeguards provided for the protection of the production		
	operator may ensure also the protection of personnel in		
	charge of setting, teaching, process changeover, fault		
	finding, cleaning or maintenance without hindering them		
	in performing their task.		
	Such tasks shall be identified and considered in the risk		N
	assessment as parts of the use of the machine (see 5.2)		-
5.3.2.5	Selection and implementation of sensitive protective		N
	equipment		-
5.3.2.5.1	Selection		N
	Due to the great diversity of the technologies on which		N
	their detection function is based, all types of sensitive		
	protective equipment are far from being equally suitable		

File No.: TCF22041513MD

	EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	for safety applications.	
	The following provisions are intended to provide the	N
	designer with criteria for selecting, for each	
	application, the most suitable device(s).	
	Types of sensitive protective equipment include, e.g.:	-
	- light curtains;	N
	- scanning devices as, e.g. laser scanners;	N
	- pressure sensitive mats;	N
	- trip bars, trip wires.	N
	Sensitive protective equipment can be used:	_
	- for tripping purposes;	N
	- for presence sensing;	N
	- for both tripping and presence sensing	N
	- to re-initiate machine operation, a practice which is	N
	subject to stringent conditions.	
	The following characteristics of the machinery, among	N
	others, can preclude the sole use of sensitive protective	
	equipment:	
	- tendency for the machinery to eject materials or	N
	component parts;	NT.
	- necessity to guard against emissions (noise, radiation, dust, etc.)	N
	- erratic or excessive machine stopping time;	N
	- inability of a machine to stop part-way through a cycle.	N
.3.2.5.2	Implementation	N
.3.2.3.2		11
	consideration should be given to:	
	a) - size, characteristics and positioning of the detection zone (see ISO 13855, which deals with the positioning	N
	of some types of sensitive protective equipment)	
	b) - reaction of the device to fault conditions (see IEC	N
	61496for electro-sensitive protective equipment)	
	c)- possibility of circumvention	N
	d)- detection capability and its variation over the course	N
	of time (e.g. as a result of its susceptibility to different	
	environmental conditions such as the presence of	
	reflecting surfaces, other artificial light sources, sunlight	
	or impurities in the air.	
	sensitive protective equipment shall be integrated in the operative part and associated with the control system of	-
	the machine so that:	
	- a command is given as soon as a person or part of a	N
	person is detected;	1
	- the withdrawal of the person or part of a person	N
	detected does not, by itself, restart the hazardous	
	machine function (s); therefore, the command given by	

EN ISO 12100:2010			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	the sensitive protective equipment shall be maintained		
	by the control system until a new command is given;		
	- restarting the hazardous machine function(s) results		N
	from the voluntary actuation, by the operator, of a		
	control device placed outside the hazard zone, where this		
	zone can be observed by the operator;		
	- he machine cannot operate during interruption of the		N
	detection function of the sensitive protective equipment,		
	except during muting phases;		
	- the position and the shape of detection field		N
	prevents, ,possibly together with fixed guards, a person		
	or part of a person from entering the hazard zone, or		
	being present in it, without being detected.		
6.3.2.5.3	Additional requirements for sensitive protective		N
	equipment when used for cycle initiation.		
	In this exceptional application, starting of the machine		N
	cycle is initiated by the withdrawal of a person or of the		
	detected part of a person from the sensing field of the		
	sensitive protective equipment, without any additional		
	start command, hence deviating from the general		
	requirement given in the second point of the dashed list		
	in 6.3.2.5.2, above. After switching on the power supply,		
	or when the machine has been stopped by the tripping		
	function of the sensitive protective equipment, the		
	machine cycle shall be initiated only by voluntary		
	actuation of a start control.		
	Cycle initiation by sensitive protective equipment shall		-
	be subject to the following conditions:		
	a) only active optoelectronic protective devices		N
	(AOPDs) complying with IEC 61496 series shall be		
	used;		
	b) the requirements for an AOPD used as a tripping and		N
	presence-sensing device (see IEC 61496) are satisfied—		
	in particular, location, minimum distance (see ISO		
	13855), detection capability, reliability and monitoring		
	of control and braking systems;		
	c) the cycle time of the machine is short and the facility		N
	to re-initiate the machine upon clearing of the sensing		
	field is limited to a period commensurate with a single		
	normal cycle;		
	d) entering the sensing field of the AOPD(s) or opening		N
	interlocking guards is the only way to enter the hazard		
	zone;		
	e) if there is more than one AOPD safeguarding the		N
	machine, only one of the AOPD (s) is capable of cycle		
	re-initiation;		
	f) with regard to the higher risk resulting from automatic		N
	cycle initiation, the AOPD and the associated control		1
	cycle initiation, the AOID and the associated control		

	EN ISO 12100:2010			
	Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
Į	Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	VCIU

	system comply with a higher safety-related performance	
	than under normal conditions.	
6.3.2.6	Protective measures for stability	P
	If stability cannot be achieved by inherently safe design	P
	measures such as weight distribution (see 4.6), it will be	
	necessary to maintain it by protective measures such as	
	the use of:	
	- anchorage bolts;	P
	- locking devices;	N
	- movement limiters or mechanical stops;	N
	- acceleration or deceleration limiters;	N
	- load limiters;	N
	- alarms warning of the approach to stability or tipping	N
	limits;	
6.3.2.7	Other protective devices	N
	When a machine requires continuous control by the	N
	operator(e.g. mobile machines, cranes) and an error of	
	the operator can generate a hazardous situation, this	
	machine shall be equipped with the necessary devices to	
	enable the operation to remain within specified limits, in	
	particular:	
	- when the operator has insufficient visibility of the	N
	hazard zone;	
	- when the operator lacks knowledge of the actual value	N
	of a safety –related parameter (e.g. a distance, a speed,	
	the mass of a load, the angle of a slope)	
	- when hazards may result from operations other than	N
	those controlled by the operator;	
	The necessary devices include:	-
	- devices for limiting parameters of movement (distance,	N
	angle, velocity, acceleration)	
	- overloading and moment limiting devices:	N
	- devices to prevent collisions or interference with other	N
	machines;	
	-device for preventing hazards to pedestrian operators of	N
	mobile machinery or other pedestrians;	
	- torque limiting devices, breakage points to prevent	N
	excessive stress of components and assemblies;	
	- devices for limiting pressure, temperature;	N
	- devices for monitoring emissions;	N
	- devices prevent operation in the absence of the	N
	operator at the control position;	
	- device to prevent lifting operations unless stabilizers	N
	are in place;	
	- devices to limit inclination of the machine on a slope;	N

File No.: TCF22041513MD P48/171

EN ISO 12100:2010			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	- devices to ensure that components are in a safe position before traveling;		N
	Automatic protective measures triggered by such devices which take operation of the machinery out of the control of the operator (e.g. automatic stop of hazardous movement) should be preceded or accompanied by a warning signal to enable the operator to take appropriate action (see 6.4.3)		N
6.3.3	Requirements for the design of guards and protective devices		P
6.3.3.1	General requirements		P
	Guards and protective devices shall be designed to be suitable for the intended use, taking into account mechanical and other hazards involved. Guards and protective devices shall be compatible with the working environment of the machine and designed so that they cannot be easily defeated. They shall provide the minimum possible interference with activities during operation and other phases of machine life, in order to reduce any incentive to defeat them.	devices have been appropriately designed.	P
	Guards and protective devices shall:		-
	- be of robust construction.	Steel	P
	- not give rise to any additional hazard;	No additional hazard	P
	- not be easy to by-pass or render non-operational;	Not be easy to by-pass	P
	- be located at an adequate distance from the danger zone (see ISO 13857 and ISO 13855).	an adequate distance from the danger zone	P
	- cause minimum obstruction to the view of the production process;		P
	- enable essential work to be carried out on installation and/or replacement of tools and also for maintenance by allowing access only to the area where the work has to be done, if possible without the guard or protective device having to be moved;		P
	For openings in the guards see ISO 13857		P
6.3.3.2	Requirements for fixed guards		P
6.3.3.2.1	Functions of guards		P
	The functions that guards can achieve are:		P
	 prevention of access to the space enclosed by guard and/or containment/capture of materials, workpieces, chips, liquids which may be ejected or dropped by the machine and reduction of emissions(noise, radiation, hazardous substances such as dust, fumes, gases) which may be generated by the machine. 		P

EN ISO 12100:2010			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	·		
	Additionally, they may need to have particular propertied relating to electricity, temperature, fire, explosion, vibration, visibility(see ISO 14120) and operator position ergonomics(e.g. usability, operator's		P
	movements, posture, repetitive movements).		
6.3.3.2.2	Requirements for fixed guards		P
	Fixed guards shall be securely held in place:		-
	- either permanently (e.g. by welding) - or by means of fasteners (screws, nuts) making removal/opening impossible without using tools; they should not remain closed without their fasteners (see ISO 14120)	place by appropriate	P
6.3.3.2.3	Requirements for movable guards		P
	a) movable guards which provide protection against hazards generated by moving transmission parts shall:		-
	- as far as possible remain fixed to the machinery or other structure (generally by means of hinges or guides) when open;		P
	- be interlocking guards (with guard locking when necessary) (see ISO 14119)		N
	b) movable guards against hazards generated by non-transmission moving parts shall be designed and associated with the machine control system so that:		-
	- moving parts cannot start up while they are within the operator's reach and the operator cannot reach moving parts once they have started up; this can be achieved by interlocking guards, with guard locking when necessary.		N
	- they can be adjusted only by an intentional action, such as the use of a tool or a key;		N
	- the absence or failure of one of their components prevents starting of the moving parts or stops them; this can be achieved by automatic monitoring (see 4.11.6)		N
6.3.3.2.4	Requirements for adjustable guards	No adjustable guards	N
	Adjustable guards may only be used where the hazard zone cannot for operational reasons be completely enclosed;		N
	They shall:		-
	- be designed so that the adjustment remains fixed during a given operation;		N
	- be readily adjustable without the use of tools;		N
6.3.3.2.5	Requirements for interlocking guards with a start function (control guards)		N
	An interlocking guard with a start function may be used provided that		-
	- all requirements for interlocking guards are satisfied (see ISO 14119)		N

EN ISO 12100:2010			
Clause	Requirement-Test Result	t-Remark Verd	dict
	- the cycle time of the machine is short	N	J
	- the maximum opening time of the guard is present to a	N	
	low value (e.g. equal to the cycle time). When this time	11	•
	is exceeded, the hazardous function(s) cannot be		
	initiated by the closing of the interlocking guard with a		
	start function and resetting is necessary before restarting		
	the machine.		
	- the dimensions or shape of the machine do not allow a	N	1
	person, or part of a person, to stay in the hazard zone or		
	between the hazard zone and the guard while the guard		
	is closed (see ISO 14120)		
	- all other guards whether fixed (removable type) or	N	1
	movable are interlocking guards;		
	- the interlocking device associated with the interlocking	N	1
	guard with a start function is designed in such a way –		
	e.g. by duplication of position detectors and use of		
	automatic monitoring (see 4.11.6)- that its failure cannot		
	lead to an unintended/unexpected start-up;	NI NI	т
	- the guard is securely held open (e.g. by a spring or	N	١
	counterweight)such that it cannot initiate a start while		
6.3.3.2.6	falling by its own weight; Hazards from guards	P)
0.3.3.2.0		1	
	Care shall be taken to prevent hazards which might be generated by:	-	
	- the guard construction (e.g. sharp edges or corners, No harp e	edges and P)
	material); corners.	ages and	
	- the movements of the guards (shearing or crushing	P)
	zones generated by power-operated guards and by heavy		
	guards which are liable to fall)		
6.3.3.3	Technical characteristics of protective devices	P)
	Protective devices shall be selected or designed and	P)
	connected to the control system so as to ensure correct		
	implementation of their safety function (s) is ensured.		
	Protective devices shall be selected on the basis of their	P)
	having met the appropriate product standard (for		
	example, IEC 61496 for active optoelectronic protective		
	devices) or shall be designed according to one or several		
	of the principles formulated in ISO 13849-1 or IEC		
	62061.		
	Protective devices shall be installed and connected to the	P)
(22:	control system so that they cannot be easily defeated.		т
6.3.3.4	Provisions for alternative types of safeguards.	N	
	Provisions should be made to facilitate the fitting of	N	1
	alternative types of safeguards on machinery where it s		
	known that this fitting will be necessary because the		
621	work to be done on it will vary.	P)
6.3.4	Safeguarding for reducing emissions	P	-

EN ISO 12100:2010			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	1		
6.3.4.1	General		
	If the measures for the reduction of emissions at source		P
	mentioned in 6.2.2.2 are not adequate, the machine shall		
	be provided with additional protective measures (see		
	6.3.4.2 to 6.3.4.5).		_
6.3.4.2	Noise		P
	Additional protective measures include, for example:	Enclosures	P
	- enclosures (see ISO 15667)		
	- screens fitted to the machine;		
(2.4.2	- silencers (see ISO 14163)		NI
6.3.4.3	Vibration		N
	Additional protective measures include, for example,		N
	damping devices for vibration isolation between the		
	source and the exposed person such as resilient mounting or suspended seats.		
	For measures for vibration isolation of stationary		N
	industrial machinery see EN 1299		11
6.3.4.4	Hazardous substances		N
	Additional protective measures include, for example:		_
	- encapsulation of the machine (enclosure with negative		N
	pressure);		1
	- local exhaust ventilation with filtration.		N
	- wetting with liquids;		N
	- special ventilation in the area of the machine (air		N
	curtains, cabins for operators)		
6.3.4.5	Radiation		N
	Additional protective measures include, for example:		-
	- use of filtering and absorption;		N
	- use of attenuating screens or guards		N
6.3.5	Complementary protective measures		N
6.3.5.1	General		N
0.3.3.1	Protective measures which are neither inherently safe		N
	design measures, nor safeguarding (implementation of		1
	guards and/or protective devices), nor information for		
	use may have to be implemented as required by the		
	intended use and the reasonably foreseeable misuse of		
	the machine. Such measures include, but are not limited		
	to, the ones dealt with in 6.3.5.2 to 6.3.5.6		
6.3.5.2	Components and elements to achieve the emergency stop		N
	function		
	If following a risk assessment, a machine needs to be		-
	fitted with components and elements to achieve an		
	emergency stop function to enable actual or impending		
	emergency situations to be averted, the following		
	requirements apply:		

	EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	- the actuators shall be clearly identifiable, clearly		N
	visible and readily accessible		1N
	- the hazardous process shall be stopped as quickly as		N
	possible without creating additional hazards . If this is		1
	not possible or the risk cannot be reduced, it should be		
	questioned whether implementation of an emergency		
	stop function is the best solution;		
	- the emergency stop control shall trigger or permit the		N
	triggering of certain safeguard movements where		
	necessary.		
	Once active operation of the emergency stop device has		N
	ceased following an emergency stop command, the		
	effect of this command shall be sustained until it is reset.		> T
	This reset shall be possible only at that location where		N
	the emergency stop command has been initiated. The reset of the device shall not restart the machinery, but		
	only permit restarting.		
	only permit restarting.		
	Mara datails for the design and selection of electrical		N
	More details for the design and selection of electrical components and elements to achieve the emergency stop		IN IN
	function are provided in EN 60204 series.		
6.3.5.3	Measures for the escape and rescue of trapped persons		P
0.3.3.3	Measures for the escape and rescue of trapped persons		
	may consist e.g. of:		
	- escape routes and shelters in installations generating		P
	operator-trapping hazards		
	- arrangements for moving some elements by hand, after		N
	an emergency stop		
	- arrangements for reversing the movement of some		N
	elements		
	- anchorage points for descender devices;		P
	- means of communication to enable trapped operators to		P
	call for help		
6.3.5.4	Measures for isolation and energy dissipation		P
	Especially with regard to their maintenance and repair,		P
	machines shall be equipped with the technical means to		
	achieve the isolation from power supply(ies) and		
	dissipation of stored energy as a result of following		
	actions:		D
	a) isolating (disconnecting, separating) the machine (or		P
	defined parts of the machine) from all power supplies; b) locking (or otherwise securing) all the isolating units		P
	in the isolating position;		1
	c) dissipating or , if this is not possible or practicable,		N
	restraining (containing) any stored energy which may		1
	give rise to a hazard;		
	d) verifying, by means of a safe working procedure, that		P

	EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	the actions taken according to a), b) and c) above have	
	produced the desired effect.	
	See ISO 14118:2000, clause 5 and EN 60204-1:2006, See the test report of	P
	5.5 and 5.6 EN 60204-1.	
5.3.5.5	Provisions for easy and safe handling of machines and	P
	their heavy component parts	
	Machines and their component parts which cannot be	P
	moved or transported by hand shall be provided or	
	capable of being provided with suitable attachment	
	devices for transport by means of lifting gear.	
	These attachments may be, among others,	-
	- standardized lifting appliances with slings, hooks,	P
	eyebolts, or tapped holes for appliance fixing;	
	- appliances for automatic grabbing with a lifting hook	N
	when attachment is not possible from the ground.	
	- guiding grooves for machines to be transported by a	N
	fork truck;	
	- lifting gear and appliances integrated into the machine.	N
	Parts of machinery which can be removed manually in	P
	operation shall be provided with means for their safe	
	removal and replacement; See also 6.4.4c) (item 3).	
5.3.5.6	Measures for safe access to machinery	P
	Machinery shall be so designed as to enable operation	P
	and all routine tasks relating to setting and/or	
	maintenance, to be carried out, as far as possible, by a	
	person remaining at ground level.	
	Where this is not possible, machines shall have built-in	N
	platforms, stairs or other facilities to provide safe access	
	for those tasks, but care should be taken to ensure that	
	such platforms or stairs do not give access to danger	
	zones of machinery.	
	The walking areas shall be made from materials which	N
	remain as slip resistant as practicable under working	
	conditions and, depending on the height from the	
	ground, suitable guard-rails (see ISO 14122-3) shall be	
	provided.	
	In large automated installations, particular attention shall	N
	be given to safe means of access such as walkways,	
	conveyor bridges or crossover points.	
	Means of access to parts of machinery located at a height	N
	shall be provided with collective means of protection	
	against falls (e.g. guard-rails for stairways, stepladders	
	and platforms and/or safety cages for ladders)	N.T
	As necessary, anchorage points for personal protective	N
	equipment against falls from a height shall also be	
	provided (e.g. in carriers of machinery for lifting persons	
	or with elevating control stations)	

	EN ISO 12100:2010	
Clause	Requirement-Test Result-Remark	Verdict
	Openings shall whenever possible open towards a safe	P
	position. They shall be designed to prevent hazards due	
	to unintended opening.	
	The necessary aids for access shall be provided (e.g.	N
	steps, handholds). Control devices shall be designed and	
	located to prevent their being used as aids for access.	
	When machinery for lifting goods and/or persons Not lifting machinery	N
	includes landings at fixed levels, these shall be equipped	
	with interlocking guards preventing falls when the	
	platform is not present at the level.	
	Movement of the lifting platform shall be prevented Not lifting platform	N
	while the guards are open.	
	For detailed provisions see ISO 14122.	P
6.4	Information for use	P
6.4.1	General requirements	P
	1	
6.4.1.1	Drafting information for use is an integral part of the	P
	design of a machine (see figure 2).	D
	Information of use consists of communication links,	P
	such as texts, words, signs, signals, symbols or	
	diagrams, used separately or in combination to convey	
	information to the user. It is directed to professional	
(1 1 2	and/or non-professional users.	D
6.4.1.2	Information shall be provided to the user about the See the instruction	P
	intended use of the machine, taking into account,	
	notably, all its operating modes.	D
	The information shall contain all directions required to See the instruction	P
	ensure safe and correct use of the machine. With this in	
	view, it shall inform and warn the user about residual	
	risk.	
	The information shall indicate, as appropriate,	-
	- the need for training, See the instruction	P
	- the need for personal protective equipment, safety glove, safety	P
	footwear, glasses	
	- the possible need for additional guards or protective See the instruction	P
	devices (see Figure 2, Footnote d).	
	It shall not exclude uses of the machine that can See the instruction	P
	reasonably be expected from its designation and	
	description and shall also warn about the risk which	
	would result from using the machine in other ways than	
	the ones described in the information, especially	
	considering its reasonably foreseeable misuse.	
6.4.1.3	Information for use shall cover, separately or in See the instruction	P
	combination, transport, assembly and installation,	
	commissioning, use of the machine (setting,	
	teaching/programming or process changeover, operation,	
	cleaning, fault-finding and maintenance) and, if	
	necessary, dismantling, disabling and scrapping.	

EN ISO 12100:2010			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
6.4.2	Location and nature of the information for use		Р
	Depending on the risk, the time when the information is needed by the user and the machine design, it shall be decided whether the information – or parts thereof – are to be given:		P
	- in /on the machine itself (see 6.3 and 6.4.4)	Adequate information is stated in the machine itself.	P
	- in accompanying documents (in particular instruction handbook, see 6.4.5)	See the instruction	P
	- on the packaging	Adequate information is stated on the packaging	P
	- by other means such as signals and warnings outside the machine.	Signals and warnings outside the machine.	P
	Standardized phrases shall be considered where important messages such as warnings need to be given (see also IEC 62079)		P
6.4.3	Signals and warning devices		P
	Visual signals (e.g. flashing lights) and audible signals (e.g. sirens) may be used to warn of an impending hazardous event such as machine start-up or overspeed.		Р
	Such signals may also be used to warn the operator before the triggering of automatic protective measures (see last paragraph of 5.2.7)		Р
	It is essential that these signals:		-
	 be emitted before the occurrence of the hazardous event; be unambiguous; be clearly perceived and differentiated from all other signals used; be clearly recognized by the operator and other persons. 	Unambiguous, clearly perceived, clearly recognized	P
	The warning devices shall be designed and located such that checking is easy.		N
	The information for use shall prescribe regular checking of warning devices.		P
	The attention of designers is drawn to the risks from "sensorial saturation" which results from too many visual and/or acoustic signals, which may also lead to defeating the warning devices.		P
6.4.4	Markings, signs (pictograms), written warnings		P
	Machinery shall bear all markings which are necessary:		-
	a) for its unambiguous identification, at least :		_

	EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	name and address of the manufacturer;designation of series or type;serial number, if any.	General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd. XD-A	P
	b) in order to indicate its compliance with mandatory requirements; - marking; - written indications (e.g. for machines intended for use in potentially explosive atmosphere)		P
	c) for its safe use, e.g.:		- D
	- maximum speed of rotating parts;		P
	- maximum diameter of tools; - mass (expressed in kilograms) of the machine itself		P P
	and/or of removable parts - maximum working load;		N
	-necessity of wearing personal protective equipment;	safety glove, safety footwear, glasses	P
	- guard adjustment data;	7.8	N
	- frequency of inspection.	See the instruction	P
	Information printed directly on the machine should be permanent and remain legible throughout the expected life of the machine.		P
	Signs or written warnings only saying "danger" shall not be used.		P
	Markings, signs and written warnings shall be readily understandable and unambiguous, especially as regards the part of the function(s) of the machine which they are related to.	5	P
	Readily understandable signs (pictograms) should be used in preference to written warnings.		P
	Signs and pictograms should only be used if they are understood in the culture in which the machinery is to be used.		P
	Markings shall comply with recognized standards (see ISO 2972, ISO 7000, particularly for pictograms, symbols, colours) See EN 60204 series as regards marking of electrical equipment.	standard.	P
6.4.5	Accompanying documents (in particular, instruction handbook)		P
6.4.5.1	Contents		P
	The instruction handbook or other written instructions (e.g. on the packaging) shall contain among others:		-

EN ISO 12100:2010			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	 a) information relating to transport, handling and storage of the machine e.g.: - storage conditions for the machine; - dimensions, mass value(s), position of the centre (s) of gravity; - indications for handling (e.g. drawings indicating application points for lifting equipment) 	information is stated in the instruction handbook	P
	b) information relating to installation and commissioning of the machine, e.g.	All the related information is stated in the instruction handbook	P
	c) information relating to the machine itself, e.g.: - detailed description of the machine, its fittings, its guards and/or protective devices; - comprehensive range of applications for which the machine is intended, including prohibited usages, if any, taking into account variations of the original machine if appropriate. - diagrams (especially schematic representation of safety functions); - data about noise and vibration generated by the machine, about radiation, gases, vapours, dust emitted by it, with reference to the measuring methods used. - technical documentation about electrical equipment (see EN 60204 series) - documents attesting that the machine complies with mandatory requirements;	in the instruction handbook	P

EN ISO 12100:2010			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	d) information relating to the use of the machine, e.g. about: - intended use; - description of manual controls (actuators); - setting and adjustment; - modes and means for stopping (especially emergency	information is stated in the instruction handbook	P
	stop) - risks which could not be eliminated by the protective measures taken by the designer; - particular risks which may be generated by certain applications, by the use of certain fittings, and about specific safeguards which are necessary for such applications.		
	 reasonably foreseeable misuse and prohibited usages; fault identification and location, repair, and re-starting after an intervention; personal protective equipment which need to be used and training required. 		
	e) information for maintenance e.g. - nature and frequency of inspections for safety functions; - instructions relating to maintenance operations which require a definite technical knowledge or particular skills and hence should be carried out exclusively by skilled persons (e.g. maintenance staff, specialists) - instructions relating to maintenance actions (e.g. replacement of parts) which do not require specific skills and hence may be carried out by users (e.g. operators) - drawings and diagrams enabling maintenance personnel to carry out their task rationally (especially fault-finding tasks)	in the instruction handbook	P
	f) information relating to de-commissioning , dismantling and disposal;	See the instruction handbook	P
	g) information for emergency situations, e.g.: - type of fire-fighting equipment to be used warning about possible emission or leakage of harmful substance(s), and if possible, indication of means to fight their effects.		N
	h) maintenance instructions provided for skilled persons (second dash in e))and maintenance instructions provided for unskilled persons (third dash in e)), that should appear clearly separated from each other.	information is stated	P
6.4.5.2	Production of the instruction handbook		P

EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test Result-Remark	Verdict
	a) type and size of print shall ensure the best possible legibility. Safety warnings and/or cautions should be emphasized the use of colours, symbols and/or large print.	P
	b) information for use shall be given in the language(s) English of the country in which the machine will be used for the first time and in the original version. If more than one language are to be used, each language should be readily distinguished from the other(s), and efforts should be made to keep the translated text and the relevant illustration together.	P
	c) whenever helpful to the understanding, text should be supplemented with written details enabling, for instance, manual controls (actuators) to be located and identified; they should not be separated from the accompanying text and should follow sequential operations.	P
	d) consideration should be given to presenting See the Instruction information in tabular form where this will aid handbook. understanding. Tables should be adjacent to the relevant text.	P
	e) the use of colours should be considered, particularly in relation to components requiring quick identification.	N
	f) when information for use is lengthy, a table of contents and/or an index should be given.	P
	g) safety-relevant instructions which involve immediate action should be provided in a form readily available to the operator.	P
6.4.5.3	Drafting and editing information for use	P
	a) relationship to model: the information shall clearly See the difference relate to the specific model of machine and, if necessary, between the models other appropriate identification (for example, by serial number).	P
	b) communicate principles: when information for use is being prepared, the communication process "see-think-use" should be followed in order to achieve the maximum effect and should follow sequential operations. The questions "how?" and "why?" should be anticipated and the answers provided.	P
	c) information for use shall be as simple and as brief as possible, and should be expressed in consistent terms and units with a clear explanation of unusual technical terms.	P

EN ISO 12100:2010		
Clause	Requirement-Test Result-Remark	Verdict
	1	
	d) when it is foreseen that a machine will be put to Not for non-professional use, the instructions should be written non-professional use in a form that is readily understood by the non-professional users. If personal protective equipment is required for the safe use of the machine, clear advice should be given, e.g. on the packaging as well as on the machine, so that this information is prominently displayed at the point of sale.	N
	e) durability and availability of the documents: Kept in electronic documents giving instructions for use should be produced in durable form (i.e. they should be able to survive frequent handling by the user). It may be useful to mark them "keep for future reference". Where information for use is kept in electronic form (e.g. CD, DVD, tape) information on safety-related issues that need immediate action shall always be backed up with a hand copy that is readily available.	P
7	Documentation of risk assessment and risk reduction	P
	The documentation shall demonstrate the procedure that has been followed and the results that have been achieved. This includes, when relevant, documentation of	-
	a) the machinery for which the risk assessment has been made (for example, specifications, limits, intended use);	P
	b) any relevant assumptions that have been made (loads, strengths, safety factors, etc.);	P
	c) the hazards and hazardous situations identified and the hazardous events considered in the risk assessment;	P
	d) the information on which risk assessment was based (see 5.2):	-
	1) the data used and the sources (accident histories, experience gained from risk reduction applied to similar machinery, etc.);	P
	2) the uncertainty associated with the data used and its impact on the risk assessment;	P
	e) the risk reduction objectives to be achieved by protective measures;	P
	f) the protective measures implemented to eliminate Warning sign and identified hazards or to reduce risk; wear PPE	P
	g) residual risks associated with the machinery;	P
	h) the result of the risk assessment (see Figure 1);	P
	i) any forms completed during the risk assessment.	P
	Standards or other specifications used to select protective measures referred to in f) above should be referenced.	Р

Notice

- 1. This test report shall be invalidation without the cachet of the testing laboratory.
- 2. This copied report shall be invalidation without sealed the cachet of the testing laboratory.
- 3. This report shall be invalidation without tester signature, reviewer signature and approver signature.
- 4. This altered report shall be invalidation.
- 5. Client shall put forward demurrer within 15days after received report. The testing laboratory shall refuse disposal if exceeded the time limit.
- 6. The test results presented in this report relate only to the object tested.

File No.: TCF22041513MD P62/171

	General Technology Group Dalian M	Machine Tool Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd.
3.2 EN13128:20	01+A2:2009/AC:2010 Asse	ssment report

File No.: TCF22041513MD P63/171

ASSESSMENT REPORT

per

EN13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010

Safety of machine tools — Milling machines (including boring machines)

TCF

Reference No.: No: TCF22041513MD

Tested by(+ signature)......Jim Song

Reviewed by(+ signature).................................Jack Ma

Date of issue: 2022-04-15

Number of pages (Report): 15

Applicant

Address: No.100, Liaohe East Road, Dalian Economic and Technological

Development Zone-East Zone 1

Test specification

Standard: EN13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010

Test procedure: CE-MD

Non-standard test method: N.A.

Test item description:

Manufacturer.....::General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp.

Co.,Ltd.

Factory.....: :General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp.

Co.,Ltd.

Trademark: NA

Model/Type reference: XD-A

Rating(s): 380V 50Hz

General product information:

The machine tool belongs to Boring machine.

File No.: TCF22041513MD P64/171

	EN 13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:201	0	
Clause	Requirement	Result-Remark	Verdict

	1104		, 01 0100
1	Scope	Boring machine	P
2	Normative references	Bornig machine	Г
3	Terms and definitions		-
		g 41 : 1	- D
4	List of significant hazards	See the risk assessment.	P
5	Safety requirements and/or protective measures	assessment.	P
5.1	General requirements		P
3.1	Machines covered by the scope of this standard shall		P
	comply with the safety requirements and/or protective		1
	measures of this clause.		
			P
	In addition, the machine shall be designed according to		Р
	the principles of EN 292 for hazards relevant but not		
	significant which are not dealt with by this standard.		-
5.2	Specific requirements		P
	Each machine type shall be designed and safeguarded in		P
	accordance with the specific requirements and/or		
	protective measures listed in tables 2, 3 or 4 and the		
	relevant requirements and/or protective measures of table		
	5.		
	Table 2 Manual machines with continuous powered axis		P
	feedrates not exceeding 2 m/min and/or a hold-to-run	automatic machines	
	controlled rapid traverse axis speed not exceeding 5		
	m/min		
	Table 3 Manual machines with continuous powered axis		
	speeds in excess of 2 m/min or hold-to-run controlled		
	rapid traverse axis speed in excess of 5 m/min		
	Table 4 Automatic machines (mechanical hazards)		
	Table 5 Manual and automatic machines (hazards other		
	than those listed in tables 2, 3, and 4)		
Table 2	1.1 Work zone	Comply with the	P
	Adjustable cutter guard(s) or adjustable guards mounted to	requirements.	
	the machine table shall be provided to inhibit access to the		
	cutting tool (see figures C.8 and C.9). Guards shall be in		
	accordance with EN 953:1997.		
Table 2	1.2 Provision for interlocked guards	No interlocked	N
	Since some applications require the user to fit an	guards.	
	interlocked movable guard, all machines shall be provided		
	with an electrical interface to connect a guard interlock		
Table 3	1.1 Work zone	Fixed guard used.	P
14010 3	1.1.1 Guarding	Tita Saara abou.	•
	Work zone shall be guarded with fixed and/or interlocked		
	TOTA Zone shall be guarded with fixed and/of intellocked		

File No.: TCF22041513MD P65/171

	EN 13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:201	0	
Clause	Requirement	Result-Remark	Verdict
	•		

	movable guard(s) (see figure C.9). Guards shall be in		
	accordance with EN 953:1997.		
Table 3	1.1.2 Interlocking	No interlocked	N
	Machine movements shall only be possible when the	guards.	
	interlocked movable guard(s) are closed. Interlocking	1	
	devices shall be in accordance with EN 1088:1995.		
	Opening of an interlocked movable guard shall cause the		
	hazardous movements to cease and be inhibited.		
	The stop category shall be 0 in accordance with 9.2.5.3 of		
	EN 60204-1:1997 except for mechanisms requiring a		
	sequenced shutdown where a category 1 stop shall be		
	implemented. Guard locking (see EN 1088:1995, 7.4)		
	shall be provided when opening of the interlocked		
	movable guard provides access to these hazards during		
	deceleration (i.e. run-down).		
	1.1.3 Provisions for setting	Comply with the	P
	When powered machine movements are required with the	* *	1
	movable guard open (e.g. for setting purposes), these		
	movements shall only be permitted under the following		
	conditions:		
	a) axis movements limited to 2m/min initiated with a		
	hold - to - run control device		
	b) spindle rotation shall be initiated and maintained by one		
	of the following means:		
	- a hold - to - run control device;		
	The spindle speed shall be limited to that capable of being stopped within two (2) spindle revolutions (no load		
	` ' '		
	condition). This reduced speed function shall be in accordance with		
	table 5, 14.		
	•		
	c) swarf/chip conveyor if provided, under hold - to - run		
	control or other suitable protective devices.	Committy swith tha	P
	1.2 Protection against impact	Comply with the	Ρ
l I	Fixed and/or interlocked movable guard(s) shall be	1	
	provided to prevent access to moving machine elements		
	with linear speeds greater than 15 m/min; for safety		
	distances, see EN 294, EN 811.		D
	1.1 Work zone		P
	1.1.1 Primary safeguards		
	The work zones of automatic machines shall be		
	safeguarded. The guarding arrangements shall be designed		

File No.: TCF22041513MD P66/171

Clause	EN 13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010 Requirement	Result-Remark	Verdict
Clause	Requirement	Result Remark	veruiet
	to prevent access to hazardous situations.		
	For the purposes of this clause,		
	1) all protective equipment shall be in accordance with the		
	following:in accordance with EN 61496-1:1997 (ESPE),		
	in accordance with prEN 61496-2:1997, category 4		
	(AOPD), in accordance with EN 61496-1:1997 (PSPD).		
	2) Guards shall be in accordance with EN 953:1997, and		
	interlocking devices shall be in accordance with EN		
	1088:1995.		
Table 4	1.1.2 Guarding strategies		P
	1.1.2.1 General		
	The work zone shall be enclosed where possible by fixed		
	and/or interlocked movable guards during machining		
	operations. Where enclosure is not reasonably practicable		
	(e.g. due to the size of the workpiece, its geometry, other		
	special characteristics of the machine or its application),		
	operators and other exposed persons shall be safeguarded		
	by a combination of other means (e.g. protected operator		
	position (cabin), perimeter guarding, other protective		
	devices).		
	1.1.2.2 Enclosure		N
	Where reasonably practicable, work zone guarding shall		
	be fixed to the structure of the machine (see 3.2.1 of EN		
	953:1997) (see also guard characteristics below and		
	figures C.10 (a), (b), (c)).		
Table 4	1.1.2.3 Alternatives to enclosures		N
	Access to the work zone, by the operator, from the normal		
	(fixed) operating position shall be prevented by local		
	guarding (typically forming a cabin - see figure C.10(d)).		
	Access to the cabin shall not require entry into the hazard		
	zone enclosed by perimeter fencing or other		
	protectivedevices. Where this is not possible because of		
	the machine configuration or other operating constraints,		
	the access route to the operating position shall not require		
	approach to hazardous situations.		
	Where the machine operator requires access to the work		
	zone from the protected (fixed) operating position (cabin)		
	e.g. for setting purposes orprocess control, the cabin shall		
	be designed so that access is via an interlocked movable		
	guard from within the cabin. Alternatively themovement		
	of a pendant control from the cabin position shall have the		
	same effect as the interlocked guard above. Operation of		

	EN 13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:201		<u> </u>
Clause	Requirement	Result-Remark	Verdict
	the machine in mode 1 (automatic cycle) shall only be		
	possible when the pendant control (above) is relocated in		
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		
	the cabin. Any other powered movement of machine		
	elements shall only be achieved by selection of the		
	appropriate operating mode (see operating modes below).		NT.
	Access to the work zone by persons other than the		N
	machine operator shall be prevented by perimeter fencing		
	and/or other means (e.g. electrosensitive protective		
	equipment (ESPE), active-opto electronic protective		
	devices (AOPDs), pressure sensitive protective devices		
	(PSPDs). Where access points (e.g. gates), are provided		
	they shall be interlocked. Where interlocking is not		
	possible because of the particular machine configuration		
	and application, any non interlocked access points shall be		
	within the visual field of the operator(s) from the normal		
	working position. Where it is foreseen that the machine		
	will be operated unattended, for some or all of the		
	operating cycle, other means of access control (e.g. key		
	pad operated locks), shall be provided to prevent		
	unauthorised access.		
Table 4	1.1.3 Multiple work zones	Only on work zone	N
	Where more than one work zone is provided on a single		
	machine, safeguards(e.g. fixed or movable interlocked		
	guards, AOPD, ESPE) shall protect the operator(s) from		
	adjacent active work zone hazards (e.g. when loading or		
	unloading workpieces in a non-active work zone,		
	cleaning).		
	Unauthorised movement of the machine into an adjacent		
	non-active work zone shall be prevented using a limiting		
	device. (e.g. Mechanical stops, range limit switches, light		
	beams, AOPDs).		
Table 4	1.1.4 Guard Characteristics	Not floor mounted.	N
Tuoie 1	1.1.4.1 Height and Position	Trovinosi mosmica.	1,
	Where guards are floor mounted (e.g. perimeter fencing),		
	they shall be securely fixed and have a minimum height of		
	1,4 m at a distance in accordance with table 2 of EN	1	
	294:1992 from the hazard zone. Any opening between the		
	bottom of the guard and the floor shall not exceed 300		
Toble 4	mm. 1.1.4.2 Containment		D
Table 4			P
	Guards shall be designed to contain and/or prevent		
	exposure to swarf/chips, fluids and parts that can be		

discharged or ejected (see also 7.1.4 mist and vapour, 17.1 fluids mists and 17.2 ejection, 19.2 contamination of floors etc., in table 5). Table 4 1.1.4.3 Observation Where routine observation of the machine operation is required, means (e.g. windows) shall be provided so that this can be achieved without the need to open, remove or suspend any work zone guard or other protective device(s) (see also 8.4 lighting, in table 5). Table 4 1.1.5 Interlocking 1.1.5.1 All movable guards through which frequent access to the work zone is required (i.e. more than once per shift) shall be interlocked. Opening of a guard or actuation of a protective device in mode 1 (automatic cycle - see below) shall cause hazardous movements to stop and further movement to be inhibited (see EN 1037). Measures to minimise the possible defeat of interlocking device(s) shall be taken (see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also 7.2.m) of clause 7).	P
fluids mists and 17.2 ejection, 19.2 contamination of floors etc., in table 5). Table 4 1.1.4.3 Observation Where routine observation of the machine operation is required, means (e.g. windows) shall be provided so that this can be achieved without the need to open, remove or suspend any work zone guard or other protective device(s) (see also 8.4 lighting, in table 5). Table 4 1.1.5 Interlocking 1.1.5.1 All movable guards through which frequent access to the work zone is required (i.e. more than once per shift) shall be interlocked. Opening of a guard or actuation of a protective device in mode 1 (automatic cycle - see below) shall cause hazardous movements to stop and further movement to be inhibited (see EN 1037). Measures to minimise the possible defeat of interlocking device(s) shall be taken (see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	
floors etc., in table 5). Table 4 1.1.4.3 Observation Where routine observation of the machine operation is required, means (e.g. windows) shall be provided so that this can be achieved without the need to open, remove or suspend any work zone guard or other protective device(s) (see also 8.4 lighting, in table 5). Table 4 1.1.5 Interlocking 1.1.5.1 All movable guards through which frequent access to the work zone is required (i.e. more than once per shift) shall be interlocked. Opening of a guard or actuation of a protective device in mode 1 (automatic cycle - see below) shall cause hazardous movements to stop and further movement to be inhibited (see EN 1037). Measures to minimise the possible defeat of interlocking device(s) shall be taken (see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	
Table 4 1.1.4.3 Observation Where routine observation of the machine operation is required, means (e.g. windows) shall be provided so that this can be achieved without the need to open, remove or suspend any work zone guard or other protective device(s) (see also 8.4 lighting, in table 5). Table 4 1.1.5 Interlocking 1.1.5.1 All movable guards through which frequent access to the work zone is required (i.e. more than once per shift) shall be interlocked. Opening of a guard or actuation of a protective device in mode 1 (automatic cycle - see below) shall cause hazardous movements to stop and further movement to be inhibited (see EN 1037). Measures to minimise the possible defeat of interlocking device(s) shall be taken (see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	
Where routine observation of the machine operation is required, means (e.g. windows) shall be provided so that this can be achieved without the need to open, remove or suspend any work zone guard or other protective device(s) (see also 8.4 lighting, in table 5). Table 4 1.1.5 Interlocking 1.1.5.1 All movable guards through which frequent access to the work zone is required (i.e. more than once per shift) shall be interlocked. Opening of a guard or actuation of a protective device in mode 1 (automatic cycle - see below) shall cause hazardous movements to stop and further movement to be inhibited (see EN 1037). Measures to minimise the possible defeat of interlocking device(s) shall be taken (see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	
required, means (e.g. windows) shall be provided so that this can be achieved without the need to open, remove or suspend any work zone guard or other protective device(s) (see also 8.4 lighting, in table 5). Table 4 1.1.5 Interlocking 1.1.5.1 All movable guards through which frequent access to the work zone is required (i.e. more than once per shift) shall be interlocked. Opening of a guard or actuation of a protective device in mode 1 (automatic cycle - see below) shall cause hazardous movements to stop and further movement to be inhibited (see EN 1037). Measures to minimise the possible defeat of interlocking device(s) shall be taken (see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	N
suspend any work zone guard or other protective device(s) (see also 8.4 lighting, in table 5). Table 4 1.1.5 Interlocking 1.1.5.1 All movable guards through which frequent access to the work zone is required (i.e. more than once per shift) shall be interlocked. Opening of a guard or actuation of a protective device in mode 1 (automatic cycle - see below) shall cause hazardous movements to stop and further movement to be inhibited (see EN 1037). Measures to minimise the possible defeat of interlocking device(s) shall be taken (see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	N
(see also 8.4 lighting, in table 5). Table 4 1.1.5 Interlocking 1.1.5.1 All movable guards through which frequent access to the work zone is required (i.e. more than once per shift) shall be interlocked. Opening of a guard or actuation of a protective device in mode 1 (automatic cycle - see below) shall cause hazardous movements to stop and further movement to be inhibited (see EN 1037). Measures to minimise the possible defeat of interlocking device(s) shall be taken (see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	N
Table 4 1.1.5 Interlocking 1.1.5.1 All movable guards through which frequent access to the work zone is required (i.e. more than once per shift) shall be interlocked. Opening of a guard or actuation of a protective device in mode 1 (automatic cycle - see below) shall cause hazardous movements to stop and further movement to be inhibited (see EN 1037). Measures to minimise the possible defeat of interlocking device(s) shall be taken (see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	N
1.1.5.1 All movable guards through which frequent access to the work zone is required (i.e. more than once per shift) shall be interlocked. Opening of a guard or actuation of a protective device in mode 1 (automatic cycle - see below) shall cause hazardous movements to stop and further movement to be inhibited (see EN 1037). Measures to minimise the possible defeat of interlocking device(s) shall be taken (see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	N
to the work zone is required (i.e. more than once per shift) shall be interlocked. Opening of a guard or actuation of a protective device in mode 1 (automatic cycle - see below) shall cause hazardous movements to stop and further movement to be inhibited (see EN 1037). Measures to minimise the possible defeat of interlocking device(s) shall be taken (see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	
shall be interlocked. Opening of a guard or actuation of a protective device in mode 1 (automatic cycle - see below) shall cause hazardous movements to stop and further movement to be inhibited (see EN 1037). Measures to minimise the possible defeat of interlocking device(s) shall be taken (see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	
shall be interlocked. Opening of a guard or actuation of a protective device in mode 1 (automatic cycle - see below) shall cause hazardous movements to stop and further movement to be inhibited (see EN 1037). Measures to minimise the possible defeat of interlocking device(s) shall be taken (see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	
mode 1 (automatic cycle - see below) shall cause hazardous movements to stop and further movement to be inhibited (see EN 1037). Measures to minimise the possible defeat of interlocking device(s) shall be taken (see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	
hazardous movements to stop and further movement to be inhibited (see EN 1037). Measures to minimise the possible defeat of interlocking device(s) shall be taken (see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	
inhibited (see EN 1037). Measures to minimise the possible defeat of interlocking device(s) shall be taken (see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	
possible defeat of interlocking device(s) shall be taken (see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	
(see clauses 5 and 7 of EN 1088:1995). Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	
Table 4 1.1.5.2 If opening of an interlocking movable guard exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	
exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	
exposes operators to hazards listed from 1.1 to 1.7 of table 1, guard locking shall be provided (see EN 1088 and also	N
7.2 m) of clause 7)	
7.2.111 OI Clause 1 j.	
Table 4 1.1.6 Modes of operation	P
Table 4 1.1.6.1 General Automatic mode and	P
Each machine shall have at least two modes of operation setting mode	
(i.e. modes 1 and 2) with the option of a third mode (i.e.	
mode 3). The selection of a mode of operation shall be	
either by key switch, access code or equally secure means	
and shall only be permitted from outside the work zone.	
Selection of a mode shall not initiate hazardous situations.	
Table 4 1.1.6.2 Mode 1 - Automatic cycle [automatic production]	P
The guards shall be closed and/or the protective devices	
be active to permit execution of programmed sequential	
machine operation under numerical control.	
Table 4 1.1.6.3 Mode 2 - Setting Not open	P
Setting mode is a mode of operation in which adjustments	
for the subsequent machining process are performed by	
the operator.	
When any interlocked movable guard is open or a	
protective device is suspended, powered machine	
movements shall only be permitted under the following	

EN 13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010

P69/171

	EN 13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:201	0	
Clause	Requirement	Result-Remark	Verdict

	1		
	conditions:		
Table 4	a) Axis movements at a maximum rate of 2 m/min or a		P
14016 4	maximum increment of 10 mm.		1
	These movements shall be selected one axis at a time and		
	may be initiated and maintained by one of the following		
	means:		
	- a hold-to-run control device;		
	- an electronic handwheel;		
	-		
	- manual data input (MDI) followed by cycle start		
T 11 4	together with an enabling device.		D
Table 4	b) Spindle speed shall be limited by its stopping		P
	performance which shall not exceed 2 revolutions.		
	Spindle rotation shall only be initiated and maintained by		
	one of the following means:		
	- a hold-to-run control device		
	a spindle start control device together with an enabling		
	device.		
	Release of an enabling device shall initiate a category 1		
	stop in accordance with 9.2.2 of EN 60204-1:1997.		
Table 4	c) The limits of speed or incremental distance [defined in		N
	a) and b) above] shall be monitored and if exceeded, the		
	power to the drives shall be removed by a controlled stop		
	(Category 1 - see 9.2.2 of EN 60204-1:1997).		
Table 4	d) Means shall be provided to prevent hazardous		N
	movement of vertical or slant axes under gravity.		
Table 4	e) Automatic workpiece changing mechanisms shall		N
	remain inhibited. Initiation of their automatic movement		
	shall only be possible by reselection of mode 1.		
Table 4	f) Unguarded swarf/chip conveyor movements shall only		N
	be initiated and maintained by a hold-to-run control		
	device.		
Table 4	g) Where multiple hold-to-run control device locations are		N
	provided (e.g. main control station, hand-held pendant),		
	only one shall be functional at a time.		
Table 4	1.1.6.4 Mode 3 - Optional mode for manual intervention	No such mode	N
	under restricted operating conditions		
Table 4	1.1.7 Release of trapped persons		N
	Means shall be provided for the movement of machine		
	axes for emergency purposes (e.g. release of trapped		
	persons). These meansare for example:		
	a) With power off:		
	- manually operated relief valves to depressurise systems		
	1 7		

	EN 13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:201	0	
Clause	Requirement	Result-Remark	Verdict
	under pressure.		

under pressure;	
- manual release of power-actuated brakes provided that	
weight-balancing exists;	
b) With power on:	
- manual control facilities of power-piloted valves/drives;	
- control facilities to start counter motions.	
Table 5 1.1 Workpiece transfer devices (e.g. pallet changing No such device	N
devices, automatic workpiece changing devices)	
1.2 Swarf /chip collection and removal Swarf /chip	P
collection	
1.2.1 Access to hazardous moving parts of swarf/chip Fixed guard.	P
collection and removal systems shall be prevented by	
means of fixed guards. Where operators have a need to	
access more frequently than once per shift, interlocked	
movable guards shall be provided. Guards shall be in	
accordance with EN 953.	
1.2.2 Opening an interlocked movable guard, which No interlocked guard	ard. N
provides access to the hazardous moving parts of a	
swarf/chip system shall cause the movement to cease and	
remain inhibited (see also 14.1.1 of this table and 1.1.5 of	
table 4).	
1.2.3 If movement of a swarf/chip system with an	N
interlocked guard open is essential (e.g. for cleaning	
purposes) the movement shall only be permitted under the	
control of a hold – to – run device with an adjacent	
emergency stop device. A warning sign shall indicate the	
hazardous area of the swarf/chip system discharge (see	
also 7.2 f) of clause 7).	
	P
1.3 Power transmission mechanisms (e.g. driveshafts,	1
belts, pulleys, gears)	P
1.3.1 Access to hazardous power transmission parts (e.g. Fixed guard	r
belts, chains, gears. pulleys, shafts) shall be prevented by	
means of fixed guards but interlocked movable guards	
shall be provided where operators have a need to access	
more frequently than once per shift. Guard shall be in	
accordance with EN 953.	
1.3.2 Opening an interlocked movable guard, which	N
exposes moving power transmission parts, shall cause	
their movement to cease and remain inhibited.	
Interlocking provisions shall conform to EN 1088 and as a	
minimum to category 1 of EN 954 - 1:1996.	
1.3.3 Where the hazardous moving parts can be reached	N

File No.: TCF22041513MD P71/171

EN 13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010				
Clause	Requirement	Result-Remark	Verdict	

		ı	
	before they come to rest. guard locking shall be applied to		
	prevent opening of the guard until the hazardous		
	movement has ceased. Delayed unlocking shall be		
	achieved by means of a motion detector or timer control.		
	(see 7.2 and 7.3 of EN 1088:1995 and EN 999).		
	1.4 Pits		N
	1.5 Operating platforms		N
	2.1 Direct contact	See the EN 60204-1.	P
	To minimise the hazards of malfunction, shock or burn, all		
	electrical equipment shall be designed and applied in		
	accordance with EN 60204-1. Means shall be provided to		
	isolate the machine from sources of electrical energy (see		
	6.2 of EN 60 204-1:1997).		
	In particular:		
	Means of isolation shall be located at the main electrical		
	enclosure in accordance with 6.2.2 (b). All other		
	enclosures shall be in accordance with 6.2.2(a). All live		
	parts shall be protected against direct contact to at least		
	IP2X in accordance with 6.2.2(c).		
	2.2 Indirect contact	See the EN 60204-1.	P
	The requirements of 6.3 of EN 60204-1:1997 shall be		
	followed.		
	2.3 Protection of control gear	IP54	P
	Enclosures of control gear shall provide a degree of		
	protection of at least IP22, see EN 60529:1991, except		
	IP55 shall be provided for control gear enclosures within		
	the work zone.		
	4.1 Noise reduction methods		P
	4.1.1 Control of noise at source	the work zone	P
	When designing milling machines, the information and		
	technical measures to control noise at source given in EN	guard	
	ISO 11688-1 and ISO/TR 11688-2 shall be followed.		
	The design shall take into account noise from each source.		
	Appropriate technical measures for reducing noise at the		
	main sound sources of the milling machines are listed		
	below:		
	a) transmission noise gearbox damping		
	b) pneumatic exhaust silencers		
	1 -		
	c) power generation source damping or absorber		
1	d) noise under cutting process		
	a) worknings shangs		
	e) workpiece change 4.1.2 Control of transmission paths		N

Clause	Requirement	Result-Remark	Verdict
	XX/I 1		
	Where noise levels must be reduced beyond those		
	achievable by design at source the machine shall be		
	provided with protective measures (e.g.; noise enclosures, screens fitted to the machinery, silencers).		
	The above list is not exhaustive. Alternative technical		
	measures for noise reduction with identical or greater		
	efficiency can be used.		
	6.5 Lasers	No laser	N
	Built - in laser feedback systems shall be designed to		11
	prevent exposure to beam paths or specular reflections,		
	see EN 60825-1:1994.		
	7.1 Fluids, mists, fumes, and dust		P
	Because the materials which may be processed depend on		1
	specific applications, it is not possible to provide detailed		
	recommendations for the reduction of the risks in this		
	standard.		
	7.2 Fire or explosion		P
	Because of the diverse nature of workpiece materials		
	which may be processed, and metalworking fluids which		
	may be used, it is not possible to provide detailed		
	requirements in this standard for the reduction of fire and		
	explosion risks. Guidance may be found in prEN		
	13478:1999, Fire Prevention and Protection, and		
	EN 1127-1:1997.		
	7.3 Minimising biological and microbiological hazards in		N
	metalworking fluids		
	8 Neglect of ergonomic principles inmachinery design		P
	8.1 Unhealthy posture or excessive efforts (repetitive		P
	strain)		
	8.2 Inadequate consideration of hand-arm or foot-leg		P
	anatomy		
	8.4 Inadequate local lighting		P
	8.6 Human error, human behaviour		P
	8.7 Inadequate design location or identification of manual		P
	controls		
	Input devices (e.g. key boards, key pads, push buttons)		
	shall be in accordance with EN 894 - 1, - 3.		
	8.8 Inadequate design or location of visual display units		P
	10.1 Failure / disorder of the control system	See the EN 60204-1	P
	Control systems shall be designed in accordance with EN		
	60 204-1, EN 982, and EN 983.		
	Unexpected machine movements (e.g. spindle rotation,		

EN 13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010

EN 13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010			
Clause	Requirement	Result-Remark	Verdict

•	
axis movement, tool release from the spindle) shall be	
prevented (see EN 1037).	
10.2 Restoration of energy supply after an interruption	P
Control system design shall ensure that automatic restart	
is prevented and re-actuation of the start control is always	
required to initiate powered movement following, for	
example, any change of mode, selection of optional	
function, system re-set, guard interlock interruption,	
restoration of adequate pressure or voltage, or correction	
of a system failure (see EN 1037).	
10.3 External influences on the electrical equipment	N
Electromagnetic compatibility	1,
Immunity:Electronic control systems shall be designed	
and installed so as to be protected from electromagnetic	
interference and stable when exposed to electrical system	
operation or failure in accordance with EN 61000-6-2	
Emission: Electrical/electronic design shall apply technical	
1 2	
electromagnetic emissions in accordance with EN 50081	
	D
$ \Theta J$ 11 J	P
13.1.1 Systems shall be designed such that a line rupture of a safety function	
in any circuit (e.g. broken wire, pipe or hose) will not	
result in the loss of a safety function (see EN 60204-1, EN	
982, EN 983).	
13.1.2 Interruption or failure of any energy supply shall not result in a hazard	P
not result in a hazard. Inadequate pressure or voltage shall	
be detected and the machine cycle shall be interrupted or	
inhibited.	
13.1.3 Means shall be provided for the isolation of power See the EN 60204-1	P
supplies (see 5.1.6 of EN 982:1996, 5.1.6 of EN 983:1996	
and 5.3 of EN 60204-1:1997) and dissipation of stored	
energy, see 5.3 of EN 1037:1995.	
14.1 Safety functions of control systems	P
15 Errors of fitting marked with	P
Means shall be embodied in the design of machine parts to instructions for fitting	
prevent errors of fitting (e.g. use of male/female	1
connections, asymmetrical location features) and/or the	
connections, asymmetrical location features) and/or the	
connections, asymmetrical location features) and/or the machine parts shall be marked with instructions for fitting.	P
connections, asymmetrical location features) and/or the	P

	EN 13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:201		
Clause	Requirement	Result-Remark	Verdict
	metalworking fluid. Such guards shall be designed in		
	accordance with clause 8 of EN 953:1997. These may take		
	the form of a deflecting adjustable guard fixed to the		
	spindle head to direct processed material/metalworking		
	fluid towards their collecting area or by a fixed guard		
	covering the whole area of ejection (see 7.2 f) of clause 7).		
	17.2 Ejection of parts - Guard strength		N
	17.3 Tool retention		N
	For power operated spindle drawbars, the drawbar shall be		
	designed to avoid risks from tool ejection if the power		
	supply fails. The drawbar mechanism shall be monitored		
	so that a failure to achieve correct registration or clamping		
	of the retention knob on the tool shall inhibit the spindle		
	start control in all operating modes. Unclamping of the		
	tool by releasing of the drawbar shall be inhibited during		
	spindle rotation.		
	18 Loss of stability/overturning of machinery	Stable.	P
	Machines shall be designed and constructed so that they		
	are stable under foreseeable operating conditions, and		
	without risks of overturning, falling or unexpected		
	movement. When the use of foundation bolting is one of		
	the measures used to help prevent overturning,		
	manufacturers shall specify the bolts and foundation		
	requirements necessary (see also 7.2 b) of clause 7).		
	19 Slip, trip and fall of persons		N
6	Verification of safety requirements and/or measures		P
7	Information for use		P
7.1	General		P
	Machine warning devices (e.g. audible and visual signals),		P
	markings (e.g. signs, symbols), and instructional material		
	(e.g. manuals for operation, maintenance) shall be in		
	accordance with clause 5 of EN 292–2:1991 and EN 457.		
7.2	Instruction handbook		P
	In addition to the requirements of 7.1, each machine shall	See the instruction	P
	be accompanied by a handbook containing:	handbook.	
	a) the name and address of the manufacturer/supplier;		
	b) any necessary information for safe installation of the		
	machine and its guarding system (e.g. Floor conditions,		
	services, anti-vibration mountings, guarding fitting);		
	c) instructions for how the initial test and examination of		
	the machine and its guarding system are to be carried out		
	before first use and being placed into production;		
	production,		1

EN 13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010				
Clause	Requirement	Result-Remark	Verdict	
	•			

- d) instructions for periodic maintenance, test and examination of the machine, guards, protective devices and other safety critical parts (e.g. spindle braking elements);
- e) instructions for any test or examination necessary after change of component parts or addition of optional equipment (both hardware and software) to the machine which can affect the safety functions;
- f) instructions for safe operation, setting and maintenance including safe working practices and the training necessary to achieve the required skill level of operators;
- g) the intended application of the machine when mode 3 (see table 4, 1.1.6.4) is provided;
- h) instructions on control systems including circuit diagrams for electrical, hydraulic, and pneumatic systems;
- i) the noise levels determined by methods specified in 7.3;
- j) descriptions of possible failure modes and advice on detection and prevention by periodic maintenance and correction;
- k) the specification for any fluid to be used in lubrication, braking, or transmission system:
- l) guidance on correct selection, preparation, application, and maintenance of metal working fluids and/or lubricants;
- m) provide guidance on the means for the release of persons trapped in the machine;
- n) information describing residual risks (e.g. conditions where noise levels are likely to exceed 80 dB (A), hazards arising from sharp or hot tools/components)
- o) recommendations on additional protective measures (e.g. personal protective equipment);
- p) information defining the limits for the maximum mass, moment of inertia, tilting moment, and spatial envelope of tools;
- q) information defining the limits for the spatial envelope, maximum mass, position of the centre of gravity of the workpiece and work holding fixture;
- r) procedures to avoid errors of fitting during maintenance of the machine;
- s) warning of the hazards arising from sharp tools/components and of the need to wear appropriate personal protective equipment;

General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd. EN 13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010

EN 13128:2001+A2:2009/AC:2010			
Clause	Requirement	Result-Remark	Verdict
	t) In particular for manually operated machines (i.e.		
	manual feed and workpiece load/unload), instructions and		
	guidance shall be provided concerning the safe methods of		
	workpiece holding. This information shall make reference		
	to correct use of suitable clamping devices and the use of		
	suitable milling fixtures.		
7.3	Noise declaration		P
7.4	Marking		P
	Each machine shall be marked in a distinct and permanent	a) General	P
	manner with:	Technology Group	
	a) name and address of the manufacturer and, where	Dalian Machine Tool	
	applicable, business name and full address of the	Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd.	
	authorised representative;	c) 380VAC.	
	b) mass of machine;	f) XD-A	
	c) supply data for electrical and where applicable.		
	hydraulic, and pneumatic systems (e.g. minimum		
	pneumatic pressure);		
	d) lifting points for transportation and installation		
	purposes where applicable;		
	e) speed range where applicable;		
	f) the designation of machinery and the designation of		
	series or type.		

Notice

- 1. This test report shall be invalidation without the cachet of the testing laboratory.
- 2. This copied report shall be invalidation without sealed the cachet of the testing laboratory.
- 3. This report shall be invalidation without tester signature, reviewer signature and approver signature.
- 4. This altered report shall be invalidation.
- 5. Client shall put forward demurrer within 15days after received report. The testing laboratory shall refuse disposal if exceeded the time limit.
- 6. The test results presented in this report relate only to the object tested.

General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd.

 $3.3\;EN\;60204\text{-}1\text{:}2018\;Assessment\;report$

ASSESSMENT REPORT

per

EN 60204-1:2018

Safety of machinery — Electrical equipment of machines — Part 1: General requirements

TCF

Reference No. : No: TCF22041513MD

Tested by(+ signature)......Jim Song

Reviewed by(+ signature)......Jack Ma

Date of issue: 2022-04-15

Number of pages (Report): 69

Applicant

Address: No.100, Liaohe East Road, Dalian Economic and Technological

Development Zone-East Zone 1

Test specification

Standard: EN 60204-1:2018

Test procedure: CE-MD

Non-standard test method: N.A.

Test item description:

Manufacturer.....::General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp.

Co.,Ltd.

Factory.....::General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp.

Co.,Ltd.

Trademark: NA

Model/Type reference: XD-A

Rating(s): 380V 50Hz

General product information:

The product is Boring machine.

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	<u> </u>	
1	Scope	_
	This part of IEC 60204 applies to electrical, electronic This machine is within and programmable electronic equipment and systems to this scope. machines not portable by hand while working, including a group of machines working together in a co-ordinated	P
	manner.	D
	This part of IEC 60204 is applicable to the electrical AC 380V equipment or parts of the electrical equipment that 50Hz. operate with nominal supply voltages not exceeding 1 000 V for alternating current (AC) and not exceeding 1 500 V for direct current (DC), and with nominal supply frequencies not exceeding 200 Hz.	Р
2	Normative references	-
3	Terms, definitions and abbreviated terms	_
4	General requirements	-
4.1	General	-
	This standard specifies requirements for the electrical equipment of machines.	P
	The risks associated with the hazards relevant to the See the risk assessment electrical equipment shall be assessed as part of the report in detail. overall requirements for risk assessment of the machine.	P
4.2	Selection of equipment	-
4.2.1	General	_
	Electrical components and devices shall:	-
	— be suitable for their intended use; and	P
	— conform to relevant IEC standards where such exist; and	P
	— be applied in accordance with the supplier's instructions.	Р
4.2.2	Switchgear	-
	In addition to the requirements of IEC 60204-1, See the component depending upon the machine, its intended use and its electrical equipment, the designer may select parts of the electrical equipment of the machine that are in compliance with relevant parts of the IEC 61439 series (see also Annex F).	P
4.3	Electrical supply	-
4.3.1	General	
	The electrical equipment shall be designed to operate correctly with the conditions of the supply:	P
1 1 7	CE22041513MD D81/	

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	'C 1: 422 422		D
	as specified in 4.3.2 or 4.3.3, or		P
	as otherwise specified by the user, or		N
	— as specified by the supplier of a special source of supply (see 4.3.4)		N
4.3.2	AC supplies		-
	Voltage Steady state voltage: 0,9 to 1,1 of nominal voltage.	380V3~, comply with ±10% rated voltage	P
	Frequency 0,99 to 1,01 of nominal frequency continuously; 0,98 to 1,02 short time.	50Hz, comply with ±2% rated frequency	P
	Harmonics Harmonic distortion not exceeding 12 % of the total r.m.s. voltage between live conductors for the sum of the 2nd through to the 30th harmonic.	<10% of the total r.m.s voltage	P
	Voltage unbalance Neither the voltage of the negative sequence component nor the voltage of the zero sequence component in three-phase supplies exceeding 2 % of the positive sequence component.		P
	Voltage interruption Supply interrupted or at zero voltage for not more than 3	Comply with requirement	P
	Voltage dips Voltage dips not exceeding 20 % of the rms voltage of the supply for more than one cycle with more than 1 s between successive dips.	lreallirement	Р
4.3.3	DC supplies	AC novyor gunnly	N
	From batteries:	AC power supply	N
	Voltage 0,85 to 1,15 of nominal voltage; 0,7 to 1,2 of nominal voltage in the case of battery-operated vehicles.		N
	Voltage interruption		N
	Not exceeding 5 ms. From converting equipment: From converting equipment:		N
	Voltage 0,9 to 1,1 of nominal voltage.		N

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	Voltage interruption		N
	Not exceeding 20 ms with more than 1 s between		
	successive interruptions.		
	Ripple (peak-to-peak)		N
	Not exceeding 0,15 of nominal voltage.		
4.3.4	Special supply systems		N
	For special supply systems (e.g. on-board generators, DC	UNIOT OPPOSTA POWER	N
	bus, etc.) the limits given in 4.3.2 and 4.3.3 may be	supply	
	exceeded provided that the equipment is designed to		
	operate correctly with those conditions.		
4.4	Physical environment and operating conditions		-
4.4.1	General		-
	The electrical equipment shall be suitable for the physical		P
	environment and operating conditions of its intended use.		
	The requirements of 4.4.2 to 4.4.8 cover the physical		
	environment and operating conditions of the majority of		
	machines covered by this part of IEC 60204. When		
	special conditions apply or the limits specified are		
	exceeded, an exchange of information between user and		
	supplier (see 4.1) can be necessary.		
4.4.2	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC)		-
	The electrical equipment shall not generate		N
	electromagnetic disturbances above levels that are		
	appropriate for its intended operating environment. In		
	addition, the electrical equipment shall have a sufficient		
	level of immunity to electromagnetic disturbances so that		
	it can function in its intended environment.		
	Immunity and/or emission tests are required on the		-
	electrical equipment unless the following conditions are		
	fulfilled:		> T
	• the incorporated devices and components comply		N
	with the EMC requirements for the intended EMC		
	environment specified in the relevant product standard (or	•	
	generic standard where no product standard exists), and;		2.7
	• the electrical installation and wiring are consistent		N
	with the instructions provided by the supplier of the		
	devices and components with regard to mutual		
	influences, (cabling, screening, earthing etc.) or with		
	informative Annex H if such instructions are not available		
	from the supplier.		

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
4.4.3	Ambient air temperature		-
	Electrical equipment shall be capable of operating	17°C~25°C	P
	correctly in the intended ambient air temperature. The		
	minimum requirement for all electrical equipment is		
	correct operation in ambient air temperatures outside of		
	enclosures (cabinet or box) between +5 °C and +40 °C.		
4.4.4	Humidity		-
	The electrical equipment shall be capable of operating		P
	correctly when the relative humidity does not exceed 50		
	% at a maximum temperature of +40 °C. Higher relative		
	humidities are permitted at lower temperatures (for		
	example 90 % at 20 °C).		
	Harmful effects of occasional condensation shall be	air conditioners used.	P
	avoided by design of the equipment or, where necessary,		
	by additional measures (for example built-in heaters, air		
	conditioners, drain holes).		
4.4.5	Altitude		-
	Electrical equipment shall be capable of operating	<1000m	P
	correctly at altitudes up to 1 000 m above mean sea level.		
	For equipment to be used at higher altitudes, it is		_
	necessary to take into account the reduction of:		
	— the dielectric strength, and;		N
	— the switching capability of the devices, and;		N
	— the cooling effect of the air.		N
	It is recommended that the manufacturer is consulted		N
	regarding the correction factors to be used where the		
	factors are not specified in product data.		
4.4.6	Contaminants		-
	Electrical equipment shall be adequately protected		P
	against the ingress of solids and liquids (see 11.3).		
	The electrical equipment shall be adequately protected	IP54	P
	against contaminants (for example dust, acids, corrosive		
	gases, salts) that can be present in the physical		
	environment in which the electrical equipment is to be		
	installed.		
4.4.7	Ionizing and non-ionizing radiation		-
	When equipment is subject to radiation (for example	TT1 1 4 1 1	N.T.
	microwaye. ulfrayiolef. lasers. X-rays). addifional		N
	measures shall be taken to avoid malfunctioning of the	equipment of the	
	equipment and accelerated deterioration of the insulation.	machine is not subject	

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	to	o ionizing and non-	
		onizing radiation.	
4.4.8	Vibration, shock, and bump		-
	Undesirable effects of vibration, shock and bump	1	D
		vith cushion reduced	P
	associated equipment and those created by the physical	ibration	
	environment) shall be avoided by the selection of suitable	ioration	
	equipment, by mounting it away from the machine, or by		
	provision of anti-vibration mountings.		
4.5	Transportation and storage		-
	Electrical equipment shall be designed to withstand, or C	Comply with the	P
	suitable precautions shall be taken to protect against, the re	equirements	
	effects of transportation and storage temperatures within		
	a range of -25 °C to +55 °C and for short periods not		
	exceeding 24 h at up to +70 °C. Suitable means shall be		
	provided to prevent damage from humidity, vibration, and		
	shock.		
4.6	Provisions for handling		-
	Heavy and bulky electrical equipment that has to be		P
	removed from the machine for transport, or that is		
	independent of the machine, shall be provided with		
	suitable means for handling, including where necessary		
	means for handling by cranes or similar equipment.		
5	Incoming supply conductor terminations and devices for		-
	disconnecting and switching off		
5.1	Incoming supply conductor terminations		-
	It is recommended that, where practicable, the electrical Si	ingle power supply.	P
	equipment of a machine is connected to a single incoming		
	supply. Where another supply is necessary for certain		
	parts of the equipment (for example, electronic		
	equipment that operates at a different voltage), that		
	supply should be derived, as far as is practicable, from		
	devices (for example, transformers, converters) forming		
	part of the electrical equipment of the machine. For large		
	complex machinery there can be a need for more than one		
	incoming supply depending upon the site supply		
	arrangements (see 5.3.1).		
	Unless a plug is provided with the machine for the		N
	connection to the supply (see 5.3.2 e)), it is recommended		
	that the supply conductors are terminated at the supply		

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	disconnecting device.	
	Where a neutral conductor is used it shall be clearly	P
	indicated in the technical documentation of the machine,	Г
	such as in the installation diagram and in the circuit	
	diagram, and a separate insulated terminal, labelled N in	
	accordance with 16.1, shall be provided for the neutral	
	conductor. The neutral terminal may be provided as part	
	of the supply disconnecting device.	
	There shall be no connection between the neutral	P
	conductor and the protective bonding circuit inside the	
	electrical equipment.	
	Exception: a connection may be made between the	P
	neutral terminal and the PE terminal at the point of the	
	connection of the electrical equipment to a TN-C supply	
	system.	
	For machines supplied from parallel sources, the Single power supply.	N
	requirements of IEC 60364-1 for multiple source systems	
	apply.	
	Terminals for the incoming supply connection shall be L1. L2, L3,N.PE	P
	clearly identified in accordance with IEC 60445. The marking.	
	terminal for the external protective conductor shall be	
	identified in accordance with 5.2.	
5.2	Terminal for connection of the external protective	-
	conductor	
	For each incoming supply, a terminal shall be provided in	P
	the same compartment as the associated line conductor	
	terminals for connection of the machine to the external	
	protective conductor.	
	The terminal shall be of such a size as to enable the Meet the requirements	P
	connection of an external protective copper conductor	-
	with a cross-sectional area determined in relation to the	
	size of the associated line conductors in accordance with	
	Table 1.	
	Where an external protective conductor of a material Copper	P
		Г
	other than copper is used, the terminal size and type shall	
	be selected accordingly.	D
	At each incoming supply point, the terminal for 'PE' is marked.	P
	connection of external protective conductor shall be	
	marked or labelled with the letters PE (see IEC 60445).	
5.3	Supply disconnecting (isolating) device	-

	EN 60204-1:2018	
Clause	Requirement-Test Result-Remark	Verdict
5.3.1	General	
	A supply disconnecting device shall be provided:	
	— for each incoming supply to (a) machine(s);	P
	— for each on-board power supply.	N
	The supply disconnecting device shall disconnect Mains switch and used	P
	(isolate) the electrical equipment of the machine from the circuit breaker supply when required (for example for work on the machine, including the electrical equipment).	r
	Where two or more supply disconnecting devices are provided, protective interlocks for their correct operation shall also be provided in order to prevent a hazardous situation, including damage to the machine or to the work in progress.	P
5.3.2	Type	-
	The supply disconnecting device shall be one of the following types:	-
	a) switch-disconnector, with or without fuses, in accordance with IEC 60947-3, utilization category AC-23B or DC-23B; b) control and protective switching device suitable for isolation, in accordance with IEC 60947-6-2; c) a circuit-breaker suitable for isolation in accordance with IEC 60947-2; d) any other switching device in accordance with an IEC product standard for that device and which meets the isolation requirements and the appropriate utilization category and/or specified endurance requirements defined in the product standard; e) a plug/socket combination for a flexible cable supply.	P
5.3.3	Requirements	-
	Where the supply disconnecting device is one of the types specified in 5.3.2 a) to d) it shall fulfil all of the following requirements:	-
	— isolate the electrical equipment from the supply and On and off position have one OFF (isolated) and one ON position marked with "O" and "I" (symbols IEC 60417-5008 (2002-10) and IEC 60417-5007 (2002-10), see 10.2.2);	P
	— have a visible contact gap or a position indicator marked with "0" which cannot indicate OFF (isolated) until all contacts are and "I" actually open and the requirements for the isolating	P

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	fraction have been estisfied.	
	function have been satisfied;	P
	— have an operating means (see 5.3.4);	P
	— be provided with a means permitting it to be locked Meet the requirements	P
	in the OFF (isolated) position (for example by padlocks).	
	When so locked, remote as well as local closing shall be	
	prevented;	> T
	— disconnect all live conductors of its power supply	N
	circuit. However, for TN supply systems, the neutral	
	conductor may or may not be disconnected except in	
	countries where disconnection of the neutral conductor	
	(when used) is compulsory;	
	— have a breaking capacity sufficient to interrupt the Meet the requirements	P
	current of the largest motor when stalled together with the	
	sum of the normal running currents of all other motors	
	and other loads. The calculated breaking capacity may be	
	reduced by the use of a proven diversity factor. Where	
	motor(s) are supplied by converter(s) or similar devices,	
	the calculation should take into account the possible	
	effect on the required breaking capacity.	
	Where the supply disconnecting device is a plug/socket Meet the requirements	P
	combination, it shall comply with the requirements of	
	13.4.5 and shall have the breaking capacity, or be	
	interlocked with a switching device that has a breaking	
	capacity, sufficient to interrupt the current of the largest	
	motor when stalled together with the sum of the normal	
	running currents of all other motors and other loads. The	
	calculated breaking capacity may be reduced by the use	
	of a proven diversity factor. Where the interlocked	
	switching device is electrically operated (for example a	
	contactor) it shall have an appropriate utilisation	
	category. Where motor(s) are supplied by converter(s) or	
	similar devices, the calculation should take into account	
	the possible effect on the required breaking capacity.	
	Where the supply disconnecting device is a plug/socket Meet the requirements	Р
	combination, a switching device with an appropriate	
	utilisation category shall be provided for switching the	
	machine on and off. This can be achieved by the use of	
	the interlocked switching device described above.	
5.3.4	Operating means of the supply disconnecting device	
	The operating means (for example, a handle) of the Handle and push button	P

	EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict	
	supply disconnecting device shall be external to the	used.		
	enclosure of the electrical equipment.			
	The operating means of the supply disconnecting device		P	
	shall be easily accessible and located between 0,6 m and			
	1,9 m above the servicing level. An upper limit of 1,7 m			
	is recommended.			
	Where the external operating means is intended for		P	
	emergency operation, see 10.7.3 or 10.8.3.			
	Where the external operating means is not intended for		-	
	emergency operations:			
	— it is recommended that it be coloured BLACK or	Black and Grey	P	
	GREY (see 10.2)			
	— a supplementary cover or door that can be readily		N	
	opened without the use of a key or tool may be provided,			
	for example for protection against environmental			
	conditions or mechanical damage. Such a cover/door			
	shall clearly show that it provides access to the operating			
	means. This can be achieved, for example, by use of the			
	relevant symbol IEC 60417-6169-1 (2012-08) (Figure 2)			
	or IEC 60417-6169-2 (2012-08), (Figure 3).			
5.3.5	Excepted circuits		-	
	The following circuits need not be disconnected by the		-	
	supply disconnecting device:			
	lighting circuits for lighting needed during		N	
	maintenance or repair;			
	— socket outlets for the exclusive connection of repair		N	
	or maintenance tools and equipment (for example hand			
	drills, test equipment) (see 15.1);		NT.	
	— undervoltage protection circuits that are only		N	
	provided for automatic tripping in the event of supply			
	failure;		NI	
	— circuits supplying equipment that should normally		N	
	remain energized for correct operation (for example			
	temperature controlled measuring devices, heaters,			
	program storage devices).		NI	
	It is recommended, however, that such circuits be		N	
	provided with their own disconnecting device. Control circuits supplied via another supply		N	
	Control circuits supplied via another supply disconnecting device, regardless of whether that		1N	
	disconnecting device, regardless of whether that disconnecting device is located in the electrical			
	disconnecting device is ideated in the electrical			

	EN 60204-1:2018				
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict		
	equipment or in another machine or other electrical equipment, need not be disconnected by the supply disconnecting device of the electrical equipment.				
	Where excepted circuits are not disconnected by the supply disconnecting device:		-		
	— permanent warning label(s) shall be appropriately placed in proximity to the operating means of the supply disconnecting device to draw attention to the hazard;		N		
	— a corresponding statement shall be included in the maintenance manual, and one or more of the following shall apply:		N		
	• the conductors are identified by colour taking into account the recommendation of 13.2.4;		N		
	• excepted circuits are separated from other circuits;		N		
	• excepted circuits are identified by permanent warning label(s).		N		
5.4	Devices for removal of power for prevention of unexpected start-up		-		
	Devices for removal of power for the prevention of unexpected start-up shall be provided where a start-up of the machine or part of the machine can create a hazard (for example during maintenance). Such devices shall be appropriate and convenient for the intended use, be suitably placed, and readily identifiable as to their function and purpose. Where their function and purpose is not otherwise obvious (e.g. by their location) these devices shall be marked to indicate the extent of removal of power.		P		
	The supply disconnecting device or other devices in accordance with 5.3.2 may be used for prevention of unexpected start-up.		Р		
	Disconnectors, withdrawable fuse links and withdrawable links may be used for protection of unexpected start-up only if they are located in an enclosed electrical operating area (see 3.1.23).		P		
	Devices that do not fulfil the isolation function (for example a contactor switched off by a control circuit, or Power Drive System (PDS) with a Safe Torque Off (STO) function in accordance with IEC 61800-5-2) may only be used for prevention of unexpected start-up during tasks		N		

	EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict	
	such as:			
	— inspections;		N	
	— adjustments;		N	
	— work on the electrical equipment where:		N	
	• there is no hazard arising from electric shock (see		P	
	Clause 6) and burn;			
	• the switching off means remains effective throughout		P	
	the work;			
	• the work is of a minor nature (for example,		P	
	replacement of plug-in devices without disturbing			
	existing wiring).			
	The selection of a device will be dependent on the risk		P	
	assessment, taking into account the intended use of the			
	device, and the persons who are intended to operate them.			
5.5	Devices for isolating electrical equipment		-	
	Devices shall be provided for isolating (disconnecting)	C:	D	
	the electrical equipment or part(s) of the electrical	Circuit breaker used	P	
	equipment to enable work to be carried out when it is			
	de-energised and isolated. Such devices shall be:			
	 appropriate and convenient for the intended use; 		P	
	— suitably placed;		P	
	 readily identifiable as to which part(s) or circuit(s) of 	C:	P	
	the equinment is served. Where their function and	Circuit breaker used for each branch circuits	P	
	purpose is not otherwise obvious (e.g. by their location)	each branch circuits		
	these devices shall be marked to indicate the extent of the			
	equipment that they isolate.			
	The supply disconnecting device (see 5.3) may, in some	Circuit breaker used	P	
	cases, fulfil that function. However, where it is necessary			
	to work on individual parts of the electrical equipment of			
	a machine, or on one of the machines fed by a common			
	conductor bar, conductor wire or inductive power supply			
	system, a disconnecting device shall be provided for each			
	part, or for each machine, requiring separate isolation.			
	In addition to the supply disconnecting device, the		-	
	following devices that fulfil the isolation function may be			
	provided for this purpose:			
	— devices described in 5.3.2;		P	
	- disconnectors, withdrawable fuse links and		P	
	withdrawable links only if located in an enclosed			
	electrical operating area (see 3.1.23) and relevant			

	EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict	
	information is provided with the electrical equipment (see			
	Clause 17).			
5.6	Protection against unauthorized, inadvertent and/or		-	
	mistaken connection			
	Where the devices described in 5.4 and 5.5 are located	Circuit breaker is inside	P	
	outside an enclosed electrical operating area they shall be	the metal enclosure	1	
	equipped with means to secure them in the OFF position	which is onened using		
	(disconnected state), (for example by provisions for	key by skilled person		
	padlocking, trapped key interlocking). When so secured,	key by skined person		
	remote as well as local reconnection shall be prevented.			
	Where the devices described in 5.4 and 5.5 are located inside an enclosed electrical operating area other means	Warning message used	P	
	miside an enclosed electrical operating area other means		1	
	of protection against reconnection (for example warning			
	labels) can be sufficient.			
	However, when a plug/socket combination according to 5.3.2 e) is so positioned that it can be kept under the	No plug/ socket outlet	N	
	3.3.2 c) is so positioned that it can be kept under the	combinations	1	
	immediate supervision of the person carrying out the			
	work, means for securing in the disconnected state need			
_	not be provided.			
6	Protection against electric shock		-	
6.1	General		-	
	The electrical equipment shall provide protection of		-	
	persons against electric shock by:			
	— basic protection (see 6.2 and 6.4), and;	See the relevant	P	
		clauses.		
	— fault protection (see 6.3 and 6.4).	See the relevant	P	
		clauses.	_	
	The measures for protection given in 6.2, 6.3, and, for		P	
	PELV, in 6.4, are a selection from IEC 60364-4-41.			
	Where those measures are not practicable, for example			
	due to the physical or operational conditions, other			
	measures from IEC 60364-4-41 may be used (e.g. SELV).			
6.2	Basic protection		-	
6.2.1	General		-	
	For each circuit or part of the electrical equipment, the		P	
	measures of either 6.2.2 or 6.2.3 and, where applicable,	clauses.		
	6.2.4 shall be applied.	m1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1		
	Where the equipment is located in places open to all			
	persons, which can include children, measures of either			
	6.2.2 with a minimum degree of protection against	and be operated by the		

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	contact with live parts corresponding to IP4X or IPXXD (see IEC 60529), or 6.2.3 shall be applied.	authorized persons.	
6.2.2	Protection by enclosures		-
	Live parts shall be located inside enclosures that provide protection against contact with live parts of at least IP2X or IPXXB (see IEC 60529).		P
	Where the top surfaces of the enclosure are readily accessible, the minimum degree of protection against contact with live parts provided by the top surfaces shall be IP4X or IPXXD.		P
	Opening an enclosure (i.e. opening doors, lids, covers, and the like) shall be possible only under one of the following conditions:		
	a) The use of a key or tool is necessary for access.	Use tool	P
	All live parts, (including those on the inside of doors) that are likely to be touched when resetting or adjusting devices intended for such operations while the equipment is still connected, shall be protected against contact to at least IP2X or IPXXB. Other live parts on the inside of doors shall be protected against unintentional direct contact to at least IP1X or IPXXA.		P
	b) The disconnection of live parts inside the enclosure before the enclosure can be opened.	No such disconnection.	N
	This may be accomplished by interlocking the door with a disconnecting device (for example, the supply disconnecting device) so that the door can only be opened when the disconnecting device is open and so that the disconnecting device can only be closed when the door is closed.		N
	Exception: a key or tool as prescribed by the supplier can be used to defeat the interlock provided that the following conditions are met:		N
	— it is possible at all times while the interlock is defeated to open the disconnecting device and lock the disconnecting device in the OFF (isolated) position or otherwise prevent unauthorised closure of the disconnecting device;		N
	— upon closing the door, the interlock is automatically restored;		N
	— all live parts, (including those on the inside of doors)		N

P93/171

	EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict	
	-			
	that are likely to be touched when resetting or adjusting			
	devices intended for such operations while the equipment			
	is still connected, are protected against unintentional			
	contact with live parts to at least IP2X or IPXXB and			
	other live parts on the inside of doors are protected			
	against unintentional contact to at least IP1X or IPXXA;			
	- relevant information about the procedures for the		N	
	defeat of the interlock is provided with the instructions			
	for use of the electrical equipment (see Clause 17).			
	- means are provided to restrict access to live parts		N	
	behind doors that are not directly interlocked with the			
	disconnecting means to skilled or instructed persons. (See			
	17.2 b)).			
	All parts that are still live after switching off the		N	
	disconnecting device(s) (see 5.3.5) shall be protected			
	against direct contact to at least IP2X or IPXXB (see IEC			
	60529). Such parts shall be marked with a warning sign			
	in accordance with 16.2.1 (see also 13.2.4 for			
	identification of conductors by colour), except for:			
	— parts that can be live only because of connection to		N	
	interlocking circuits and that are distinguished by colour			
	as potentially live in accordance with 13.2.4;			
	— the supply terminals of the supply disconnecting		N	
	device when the latter is mounted alone in a separate			
	enclosure.			
	c) Opening without the use of a key or a tool and	Use tool.	N	
	without disconnection of live parts shall be possible only			
	when all live parts are protected against contact to at least			
	IP2X or IPXXB (see IEC 60529). Where barriers provide			
	this protection, either they shall require a tool for their			
	removal or all live parts protected by them shall be			
	automatically disconnected when the barrier is removed.			
	Where protection against contact is achieved in			
	accordance with 6.2.2 c), and a hazard can be caused by			
	manual actuation of devices (for example manual closing			
	of contactors or relays), such actuation should be			
	prevented by barriers or obstacles that require a tool for			
	their removal.			
6.2.3	Protection by insulation of live parts		-	
	Live parts protected by insulation shall be completely	Removed by	P	

	EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test I	Result-Remark Verdi		
6.2.4	covered with insulation that can only be removed by destruction. Such insulation shall be capable of withstanding the mechanical, chemical, electrical, and thermal stresses to which it can be subjected under normal operating conditions. Protection against residual voltages Live parts having a residual voltage greater than 60 V when the supply is disconnected shall be discharged to 60 V or less within a time period of 5 s provided that this	uction - N		
	rate of discharge does not interfere with the proper functioning of the equipment. Exempted from this requirement are components having a stored charge of 60°C or less. Where this specified rate of discharge would interfere with the proper functioning of the equipment, a durable warning notice drawing attention to the hazard and stating the delay required before the enclosure may be opened shall be displayed at an easily visible location on or immediately adjacent to the enclosure that contains the live parts.			
	In the case of plugs or similar devices, the withdrawal of which results in the exposure of conductors (for example pins), the discharge time to 60 V shall not exceed 1 s, otherwise such conductors shall be protected to at least IP2X or IPXXB. If neither a discharge time of 1 s nor a protection of at least IP2X or IPXXB can be achieved (for example in the case of removable collectors on conductor wires, conductor bars, or slip-ring assemblies, see 12.7.4), additional switching devices or an appropriate warning, for example a warning sign drawing attention to the hazard and stating the delay required shall be provided. When the equipment is located in places open to all persons, which can include children, warnings are not sufficient and therefore a minimum degree of protection against contact with live parts to IP4X or IPXXD is required.	P		
6.2.5	Protection by barriers			
	For protection by barriers, the requirements of IEC Meet 60364-4-41 shall apply.	the requirements P		
6.2.6	Protection by placing out of reach or protection by obstacles	-		

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	For protection by placing out of reach, the requirements of IEC 60364-4-41 shall apply. For protection by obstacles, the requirements of IEC 60364-4-41 shall apply.		P
	For conductor wire systems or conductor bar systems with a degree of protection less than IP2X or IPXXB, see 12.7.1.		P
6.3	Fault protection		-
6.3.1	General		-
	Fault protection (3.31) is intended to prevent hazardous situations due to an insulation fault between live parts and exposed conductive parts.		Р
	For each circuit or part of the electrical equipment, at least one of the measures in accordance with 6.3.2 to 6.3.3 shall be applied:	descriptions.	P
	— measures to prevent the occurrence of a touch	See the following	P
	S ():	descriptions.	
	— automatic disconnection of the supply before the time of contact with a touch voltage can become hazardous (6.3.3).	_	P
6.3.2	Prevention of the occurrence of a touch voltage		-
6.3.2.1	General		-
	Measures to prevent the occurrence of a touch voltage include the following:		-
	 provision of class II equipment or by equivalent insulation; 	Not class equipment	N
	— electrical separation.		P
6.3.2.2	Protection by provision of class II equipment or by equivalent insulation		-
	This measure is intended to prevent the occurrence of touch voltages on the accessible parts through a fault in the basic insulation.		N
	This protection is provided by one or more of the following:		-
	— class II electrical devices or apparatus (double insulation, reinforced insulation or by equivalent insulation in accordance with IEC 61140);		N
	 switchgear and controlgear assemblies having total insulation in accordance with IEC 61439-1; 		N
	 supplementary or reinforced insulation in accordance 		N

with IEC 60364-4-41.	EN 60204-1:2018			
Electrical separation of an individual circuit is intended to prevent a touch voltage through contact with exposed conductive parts that can be energized by a fault in the basic insulation of the live parts of that circuit. For this type of protection, the requirements of IEC 60364-4-41 apply. 6.3.3 Protection by automatic disconnection of supply Automatic disconnection of fault in the affected by an insulation fault is intended to prevent a hazardous situation resulting from a touch voltage. This measure consists of the interruption of one or more of the line conductors by the automatic operation of a protective device in case of a fault. This interruption shall occur within a sufficiently short time to limit the duration of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective devices (RCDs	Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
Electrical separation of an individual circuit is intended to prevent a touch voltage through contact with exposed conductive parts that can be energized by a fault in the basic insulation of the live parts of that circuit. For this type of protection, the requirements of IEC 60364-4-41 apply. 6.3.3 Protection by automatic disconnection of supply Automatic disconnection of fault in the affected by an insulation fault is intended to prevent a hazardous situation resulting from a touch voltage. This measure consists of the interruption of one or more of the line conductors by the automatic operation of a protective device in case of a fault. This interruption shall occur within a sufficiently short time to limit the duration of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective devices (RCDs				
Electrical separation of an individual circuit is intended to prevent a touch voltage through contact with exposed conductive parts that can be energized by a fault in the basic insulation of the live parts of that circuit. For this type of protection, the requirements of IEC 60364-4-41 apply. 6.3.3 Protection by automatic disconnection of supply Automatic disconnection of the supply of any circuit affected by an insulation fault is intended to prevent a hazardous situation resulting from a touch voltage. This measure consists of the interruption of one or more of the line conductors by the automatic operation of a protective device in case of a fault. This interruption shall occur within a sufficiently short time to limit the duration of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective devices (SDs) and associated overcurrent protective devices (SDs) and associated overcurrent protective devices to initiate the automatic disconnection of the		with IEC 60364-4-41.		
prevent a touch voltage through contact with exposed conductive parts that can be energized by a fault in the basic insulation of the live parts of that circuit. For this type of protection, the requirements of IEC 60364-4-41 apply. 6.3.3 Protection by automatic disconnection of supply Automatic disconnection of the supply of any circuit Breaker used. affected by an insulation fault is intended to prevent a hazardous situation resulting from a touch voltage. This measure consists of the interruption of one or more of the line conductors by the automatic operation of a protective device in case of a fault. This interruption shall occur within a sufficiently short time to limit the duration of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective devices(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective devices of the conductive protective device(s) to initiate the automatic disconnection of the	6.3.2.3	Protection by electrical separation		-
prevent a touch voltage through contact with exposed conductive parts that can be energized by a fault in the basic insulation of the live parts of that circuit. For this type of protection, the requirements of IEC 60364-4-41 apply. 6.3.3 Protection by automatic disconnection of supply Automatic disconnection of the supply of any circuit affected by an insulation fault is intended to prevent a hazardous situation resulting from a touch voltage. This measure consists of the interruption of one or more of the line conductors by the automatic operation of a protective device in case of a fault. This interruption shall occur within a sufficiently short time to limit the duration of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the carthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective devices (RCDs) to initiate the automatic disconnection of the		Electrical separation of an individual circuit is intended to	Electrical alegrance and	D
conductive parts that can be energized by a fault in the basic insulation of the live parts of that circuit. For this type of protection, the requirements of IEC 60364-4-41 apply. 6.3.3 Protection by automatic disconnection of supply Automatic disconnection of the supply of any circuit affected by an insulation fault is intended to prevent a hazardous situation resulting from a touch voltage. This measure consists of the interruption of one or more of the line conductors by the automatic operation of a protective device in case of a fault. This interruption shall occur within a sufficiently short time to limit the duration of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective devices		prevent a touch voltage through contact with exposed		1
For this type of protection, the requirements of IEC 60364-4-41 apply. 6.3.3 Protection by automatic disconnection of supply Automatic disconnection of the supply of any circuit affected by an insulation fault is intended to prevent a hazardous situation resulting from a touch voltage. This measure consists of the interruption of one or more of the line conductors by the automatic operation of a protective device in case of a fault. This interruption shall occur within a sufficiently short time to limit the duration of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective devices (RCD		conductive parts that can be energized by a fault in the	1 0	
For this type of protection, the requirements of IEC 60364-4-1 apply. 6.3.3 Protection by automatic disconnection of supply Automatic disconnection of the supply of any circuit affected by an insulation fault is intended to prevent a hazardous situation resulting from a touch voltage. This measure consists of the interruption of one or more of the line conductors by the automatic operation of a protective device in case of a fault. This interruption shall occur within a sufficiently short time to limit the duration of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; Breaker uses P • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device of the		basic insulation of the live parts of that circuit.		
6.3.3 Protection by automatic disconnection of supply Automatic disconnection of the supply of any circuit affected by an insulation fault is intended to prevent a hazardous situation resulting from a touch voltage. This measure consists of the interruption of one or more of the line conductors by the automatic operation of a protective device in case of a fault. This interruption shall occur within a sufficiently short time to limit the duration of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective devices (RCDs) and associated o			requirements	D
Automatic disconnection of the supply of any circuit affected by an insulation fault is intended to prevent a hazardous situation resulting from a touch voltage. This measure consists of the interruption of one or more of the line conductors by the automatic operation of a protective device in case of a fault. This interruption shall occur within a sufficiently short time to limit the duration of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protec				1
Automatic disconnection of the supply of any circuit affected by an insulation fault is intended to prevent a hazardous situation resulting from a touch voltage. This measure consists of the interruption of one or more of the line conductors by the automatic operation of a protective device in case of a fault. This interruption shall occur within a sufficiently short time to limit the duration of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective devices of the operation of the	633			_
affected by an insulation fault is intended to prevent a hazardous situation resulting from a touch voltage. This measure consists of the interruption of one or more of the line conductors by the automatic operation of a protective device in case of a fault. This interruption shall occur within a sufficiently short time to limit the duration of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective devices of the off the automatic disconnection of the	0.5.5		Breaker used	p
hazardous situation resulting from a touch voltage. This measure consists of the interruption of one or more of the line conductors by the automatic operation of a protective device in case of a fault. This interruption shall occur within a sufficiently short time to limit the duration of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; Breaker uses P • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective devices of the protective devices of the protective devices of the protective devices of the protective device of the protective devices				1
This measure consists of the interruption of one or more of the line conductors by the automatic operation of a protective device in case of a fault. This interruption shall occur within a sufficiently short time to limit the duration of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; Breaker uses P • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective devices(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective devices of the protective device		_		
of the line conductors by the automatic operation of a protective device in case of a fault. This interruption shall occur within a sufficiently short time to limit the duration of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device of the conductive protective devices of the conductive protective devices of the protective of the duration of the protective devices of the protective of the duration of the protective devices of the protective of the duration of the protective devices of the protective of the duration of the protective devices of the duration of the protective devi				p
protective device in case of a fault. This interruption shall occur within a sufficiently short time to limit the duration of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device of the entropy of the		<u> </u>		1
occur within a sufficiently short time to limit the duration of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective devices of the protective device of the protective devices may be used: • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device of the prote		ļ		
of a touch voltage to a time within the limits specified in Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device of the supplies of t				
Annex A for TN and TT systems. This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device of the supplies		-		
This measure necessitates co-ordination between: — the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device of the supplies				
— the type of supply system, the supply source impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device of the automatic disconnection of the				_
impedance and the earthing system; — the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device of the device(s) to initiate the automatic disconnection of the				Р
— the impedance values of the different elements of the line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: — a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device of the device(s) to initiate the automatic disconnection of the				1
line and of the associated fault current paths through the protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: — a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device of the automatic disconnection of the				Р
protective bonding circuit; — the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: — a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device of the entry of th		_		
- the characteristics of the protective devices that detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: - protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), - and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective devices of the device of				
detect insulation fault(s). This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device of the device				Р
This protective measure comprises both: — protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device(s) to initiate the automatic disconnection of the		<u>-</u>		
- protective bonding of exposed conductive parts (see 8.2.3), - and one of the following: - a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device(s) to initiate the automatic disconnection of the				-
8.2.3), — and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device(s) to initiate the automatic disconnection of the				P
 and one of the following: a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: overcurrent protective devices; residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device(s) to initiate the automatic disconnection of the 				
a) In TN systems, the following protective devices may be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device(s) to initiate the automatic disconnection of the		71		_
be used: • overcurrent protective devices; • residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device(s) to initiate the automatic disconnection of the		5		-
residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device(s) to initiate the automatic disconnection of the				
residual current protective devices (RCDs) and associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device(s) to initiate the automatic disconnection of the		overcurrent protective devices;	Breaker uses	P
associated overcurrent protective device(s). b) in TT systems, either: • RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device(s) to initiate the automatic disconnection of the				N
b) in TT systems, either: RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device(s) to initiate the automatic disconnection of the		·		
RCDs and associated overcurrent protective device(s) to initiate the automatic disconnection of the			TN system	_
device(s) to initiate the automatic disconnection of the			•	N
		1		

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	to organized and hostire master and a coult on	
	to exposed conductive parts or to earth, or	NT
	• overcurrent protective devices may be used for fault	N
	protection provided a suitably low value of the fault loop	
	impedance Zs (see A.2.2.3) is permanently and reliably	
	assured;	.
	c) In IT systems the relevant requirements of IEC	N
	60364-4-41 shall be fulfilled. During an insulation fault,	
	an acoustic and optical signal shall be sustained. After	
	annunciation, the acoustic signal may then be manually	
	muted. This can require an agreement between the	
	supplier and user regarding the provision of insulation	
	monitoring devices and/or insulation fault location	
	system(s).	
	Where automatic disconnection is provided in accordance	P
	with a), and disconnection within the time specified in	
	A.1.1 cannot be assured, supplementary protective	
	bonding shall be provided as necessary to meet the	
	requirements of A.1.3.	
	Where a power drive system (PDS) is provided, fault Meet the requirements	P
	protection shall be provided for those circuits of the	
	power drive system that are supplied by the converter.	
	Where this protection is not provided within the	
	converter, the necessary protection measures shall be in	
	accordance with the converter manufacturer's	
	instructions.	
6.4	Protection by the use of PELV	P
6.4.1	General requirements	P
	The use of PELV (Protective Extra-Low Voltage) is to	P
	protect persons against electric shock from indirect	
	contact and limited area direct contact (see 8.2.1).	
	PELV circuits shall satisfy all of the following conditions:	-
	a) the nominal voltage shall not exceed:	-
	• 25 V AC r.m.s. or 60 V ripple-free DC when the 24V	P
	equipment is normally used in dry locations and when	
	large area contact of live parts with the human body is not	
	expected; or	
	6 V AC r.m.s. or 15 V ripple-free DC in all other	N
	cases;	
	b) one side of the circuit or one point of the source of	N

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	protective bonding circuit;		
	c) live parts of PELV circuits shall be electrically		N
	separated from other live circuits. Electrical separation		11
	shall be not less than that required between the primary		
	and secondary circuits of a safety isolating transformer		
	(see IEC 61558-1 and IEC 61558-2-6);		NT.
	d) conductors of each PELV circuit shall be physically		N
	separated from those of any other circuit. When this		
	requirement is impracticable, the insulation provisions of		
	13.1.3 shall apply;		
	e) plugs and socket-outlets for a PELV circuit shall		N
	conform to the following:		
	• plugs shall not be able to enter socket-outlets of other		N
	voltage systems;		
	• socket-outlets shall not admit plugs of other voltage		N
	systems.		
6.4.2	Sources for PELV		-
	The source for PELV shall be one of the following:		-
	— a safety isolating transformer in accordance with IEC		P
	61558-1 and IEC 61558-2-6;		
	— a source of current providing a degree of safety		N
	equivalent to that of the safety isolating transformer (for		
	example a motor generator with winding providing		
	equivalent isolation);		
	— an electrochemical source (for example a battery) or		N
	another source independent of a higher voltage circuit		
	(for example a diesel-driven generator);		
	— an electronic power supply conforming to		N
	appropriate standards specifying measures to be taken to		
	ensure that, even in the case of an internal fault, the		
	voltage at the outgoing terminals cannot exceed the		
	values specified in 6.4.1.		
7	Protection of equipment		-
7.1	General		_
	This Clause 7 details the measures to be taken to protect		-
	equipment against the effects of:		
	 overcurrent arising from a short-circuit; 		P
	overload and/or loss of cooling of motors;		P
	— abnormal temperature;		N
	loss of or reduction in the supply voltage;		P
L	— loss of of feduction in the supply voltage,	D00/1	

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	— overspeed of machines/machine elements;		N
	— earth fault/residual current;		N
	— incorrect phase sequence;		P
	 overvoltage due to lightning and switching surges. 		P
7.2	Overcurrent protection		-
7.2.1	General		P
	Overcurrent protection shall be provided where the current in any circuit can exceed either the rating of any component or the current carrying capacity of the conductors, whichever is the lesser value. The ratings or settings to be selected are detailed in 7.2.10.	have overcurrent	P
7.2.2	Supply conductors		_
	Unless otherwise specified by the user, the supplier of the electrical equipment is not responsible for providing the supply conductors and the overcurrent protective device for the supply conductors to the electrical equipment.	have overcurrent	P
	The supplier of the electrical equipment shall state in the installation documents the data necessary for conductor dimensioning (including the maximum cross-sectional area of the supply conductor that can be connected to the terminals of the electrical equipment) and for selecting the overcurrent protective device (see 7.2.10 and 17).		Р
7.2.3	Power circuits		-
	Devices for detection and interruption of overcurrent, selected in accordance with 7.2.10, shall be applied to each live conductor including circuits supplying control circuit transformers.		Р
	The following conductors, as applicable, shall not be disconnected without disconnecting all associated live conductors:		-
	— the neutral conductor of AC power circuits;	No such circuit	N
	— the earthed conductor of DC power circuits;	No such circuit	N
	— DC power conductors bonded to exposed conductive parts of mobile machines.		N
	Where the cross-sectional area of the neutral conductor is at least equal to or equivalent to that of the line conductors, it is not necessary to provide overcurrent detection for the neutral conductor nor a disconnecting device for that conductor. For a neutral conductor with a cross- sectional area smaller than that of the associated		N

P101/171

	EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict	
	line conductors, the measures detailed in 524 of IEC			
	60364-5-52:2009 shall apply.			
	In IT systems, it is recommended that the neutral		N	
	conductor is not used. However, where a neutral			
	conductor is used, the measures detailed in 431.2.2 of			
	IEC 60364-4-43:2008 shall apply.			
7.2.4	Control circuits		-	
	Conductors of control circuits directly connected to the		P	
	supply voltage shall be protected against overcurrent in			
	accordance with 7.2.3.	D 1 1		
	Conductors of control circuits supplied by a transformer		P	
	or DC supply shall be protected against overcurrent (see			
	also 9.4.3.1.1): — in control circuits connected to the protective		P	
	bonding circuit, by inserting an overcurrent protective		r	
	device into the switched conductor;			
	— in control circuits not connected to the protective		P	
	bonding circuit;		1	
	 where all control circuits of the equipment have the 		N	
	same current carrying capacity, by inserting an			
	overcurrent protective device into the switched conductor,			
	or;			
	• where different control circuits of the equipment		P	
	have different current carrying capacity, by inserting an			
	overcurrent protective device into both switched and			
	common conductors of each control circuit.			
	Exception: Where the supply unit provides current		N	
	limiting below the current carrying capacity of the			
	conductors in a circuit and below the current rating of			
	connected components, no separate overcurrent			
	protective device is required.			
7.2.5	Socket outlets and their associated conductors	No such device.	N	
	Overcurrent protection shall be provided for the circuits		N	
	feeding the general purpose socket outlets intended			
	primarily for supplying power to maintenance equipment.			
	Overcurrent protective devices shall be provided in the			
	unearthed live conductors of each circuit feeding such			
7.2.6	socket outlets. See also 15.1.			
7.2.6	Lighting circuits All uncerthed conductors of circuits symplying lighting		NT	
	All unearthed conductors of circuits supplying lighting		N	

P102/171

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	shall be protected against the effects of short-circuits by the provision of overcurrent devices separate from those protecting other circuits.		
7.2.7	Transformers Transformers shall be protected by an overcurrent protective device having a type and setting in accordance with the transformer manufacturer's instructions. Such protection shall (see also 7.2.10):		P
	— avoid nuisance tripping due to transformer magnetizing inrush currents;		P
	— avoid a winding temperature rise in excess of the permitted value for the insulation class of transformer when it is subjected to the effects of a short-circuit at its secondary terminals.		Р
7.2.8	Location of overcurrent protective devices		P
	conductors or another change reduces the current-carrying capacity of the conductors, except where all the following conditions are satisfied:	conductor is connected to the supply	P
	— the current carrying capacity of the conductors is at least equal to that of the load;	requirement	P
	— the part of the conductor(s) between the point of reduction of current-carrying capacity and the position of the overcurrent protective device is no longer than 3 m;		P
	— the conductors are installed in such a manner as to reduce the possibility of a short- circuit, for example, protected by an enclosure or duct.	By enclosure	P
7.2.9	Overcurrent protective devices		_
	overcurrent protective device can include additional currents other than from the supply (for example from motors, from power factor correction capacitors), those currents shall be taken into consideration.	requirement	Р
	Where fuses are provided as overcurrent protective devices, a type readily available in the country of use shall be selected, or arrangements shall be made for the	requirement	Р

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	supply of spare parts.	
7.2.10	Rating and setting of overcurrent protective devices	-
	The rated current of fuses or the setting current of other Meet the requirements	P
	overcurrent protective devices shall be selected as low as	
	possible but adequate for the anticipated overcurrents (for	
	example during starting of motors or energizing of	
	transformers). When selecting those protective devices,	
	consideration shall be given to the protection of switching	
	devices against damage due to overcurrents.	
	The rated current or setting of an overcurrent protective device for conductors is determined by the current. Meet the requirements	P
	device for conductors is determined by the current	P
	carrying capacity of the conductors to be protected in	
	accordance with 12.4, Clause D.3 and the maximum	
	allowable interrupting time t in accordance with Clause	
	D.4, taking into account the needs of co-ordination with	
	other electrical devices in the protected circuit.	
7.3	Protection of motors against overheating	-
7.3.1	General	_
	Protection of motors against overheating shall be	D
	provided for each motor rated at more than 0,5 kW.	P
	Protection of motors against overheating can be achieved	-
	by:	
	— overload protection (7.3.2),	P
	— over-temperature protection (7.3.3), or	P
	— current-limiting protection.	P
	Automatic restarting of any motor after the operation of	N
	protection against overheating shall be prevented where	
	this can cause a hazardous situation or damage to the	
	machine or to the work in progress.	
7.3.2	Overload protection	
	Where overload protection is provided, detection of	D
	overload(s) shall be provided in each live conductor	P
	except for the neutral conductor.	
	However, where the motor overload detection is not used) T
	for cable overload protection (see also Clause D.2),	N
	detection of overload may be omitted in one of the live	
	conductors. For motors having single-phase or DC power	
	supplies, detection in only one unearthed live conductor	
	is permitted.	
	Where overload protection is achieved by switching off,	N
	- ·	-

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	the switching device shall switch off all live conductors.		
	The switching of the neutral conductor is not necessary		
	for overload protection.		
	Where motors with special duty ratings are required to		N
	start or to brake frequently (for example, motors for rapid		
	traverse, locking, rapid reversal, sensitive drilling) it can		
	be difficult to provide overload protection with a time		
	constant comparable with that of the winding to be		
	protected. Appropriate protective devices designed to		
	accommodate special duty motors or over-temperature		
	protection (see 7.3.3) can be necessary.		
	For motors that cannot be overloaded (for example torque		N
	motors, motion drives that either are protected by		
	mechanical overload protection devices or are adequately		
	dimensioned), overload protection is not required.		
7.3.3	Over-temperature protection		-
	The provision of motors with over-temperature protection		P
	in accordance with IEC 60034-11 is recommended in		
	situations where the cooling can be impaired (for		
	example dusty environments). Depending upon the type		
	of motor, protection under stalled rotor or loss of phase		
	conditions is not always ensured by over-temperature		
	protection, and additional protection should then be		
	provided.		
	Over-temperature protection is also recommended for		P
	motors that cannot be overloaded (for example torque		
	motors, motion drives that are either protected by		
	mechanical overload protection devices or are adequately		
	dimensioned), where the possibility of over-temperature		
7.4	exists (for example due to reduced cooling).		
7.4	Protection against abnormal temperature		- D
	Equipment shall be protected against abnormal		P
7.5	temperatures that can result in a hazardous situation.		
7.5	Protection against the effects of supply interruption or		_
	voltage reduction and subsequent restoration		
	Where a supply interruption or a voltage reduction can	Under voltage	P
	cause a hazardous situation, damage to the machine, or to	protection provided.	
	the work in progress, undervoltage protection shall be provided by, for example, switching off the machine at a		
	predetermined voltage level.		
	predetermined vonage level.		

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	Where the operation of the machine can allow for an interruption or a reduction of the voltage for a short time period, delayed undervoltage protection may be provided.		P
	The operation of the undervoltage device shall not impair the operation of any stopping control of the machine.		N
	Upon restoration of the voltage or upon switching on the incoming supply, automatic or unexpected restarting of the machine shall be prevented where such a restart can cause a hazardous situation.		N
	Where only a part of the machine or of the group of machines working together in a co- ordinated manner is affected by the voltage reduction or supply interruption, the undervoltage protection shall initiate appropriate control commands to ensure co-ordination.		N
7.6	Motor overspeed protection		-
	Overspeed protection shall be provided where overspeeding can occur and could possibly cause a hazardous situation taking into account measures in accordance with 9.3.2. Overspeed protection shall initiate appropriate control responses and shall prevent automatic restarting.		N
	The overspeed protection should operate in such a manner that the mechanical speed limit of the motor or its load is not exceeded.		N
7.7	Additional earth fault/residual current protection	No such protection	N
	In addition to providing overcurrent protection for automatic disconnection as described in 6.3, earth fault/residual current protection can be provided to reduce damage to equipment due to earth fault currents less than the detection level of the overcurrent protection.		N
	The setting of the devices shall be as low as possible consistent with correct operation of the equipment.		N
	If fault currents with DC components are possible, an RCD of type B in accordance with IEC TR 60755 can be required.		N
7.8	Phase sequence protection	No such protection	N
	Where an incorrect phase sequence of the supply voltage can cause a hazardous situation or damage to the machine, protection shall be provided.		N
7.9	Protection against overvoltages due to lightning and to		-

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	switching surges	
	Surge protective devices (SPDs) can be provided to protect against the effects of overvoltages due to lightning	P
	or to switching surges.	
	Where provided:	
	where provided:	
	— SPDs for the suppression of overvoltages due to Circuit breaker used	P
	fighting shall be connected to the meoning terminals of	
	the supply disconnecting device.	
	— SPDs for the suppression of overvoltages due to Circuit breaker used	P
	switching surges shall be connected as necessary for	
	equipment requiring such protection.	
7.10	Short-circuit current rating	-
	The short-circuit current rating of the electrical c.	
	equipment shall be determined. This can be done by the	P
	application of design rules or by calculation or by test.	
8	Equipotential bonding	-
8.1	General	_
0.1	This Clause 8 provides requirements for protective	P
	bonding and functional bonding. Figure 4 illustrates those	•
	concepts.	
	Protective bonding is a basic provision for fault Meet the requirements	P
	protection to enable protection of persons against electric	•
	shock (see 6.3.3 and 8.2).	
	The objective of functional bonding (see 8.4) is to reduce:	_
		- Р
	— the consequence of an insulation failure which could	r
	affect the operation of the machine;	
	— electrical disturbances to sensitive electrical	P
	equipment which could affect the operation of the	
	machine;	
	— induced currents from lightning which could damage	P
	the electric equipment.	
	Functional bonding is achieved by connection to the Meet the requirements	P
	protective bonding circuit, but where the level of	
	electrical disturbances on the protective bonding circuit is	
	not sufficiently low for proper functioning of electrical	
	equipment, it can be necessary to use separate conductors	
	for protective and functional bonding.	
8.2	Protective bonding circuit	-
8.2.1	General	_

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
			_
	The protective bonding circuit consists of the		-
1	interconnection of:		
	• PE terminal(s) (see 5.2);		P
	• the protective conductors (see 3.1.51) in the		N
1	equipment of the machine including sliding contacts		
,	where they are part of the circuit;		
	• the conductive structural parts and exposed		N
1	conductive parts of the electrical equipment; Exception:		
	see 8.2.5.		P
	• conductive structural parts of the machine.		P
1 1	All parts of the protective bonding circuit shall be so		P
1	designed that they are capable of withstanding the highest thermal and mechanical stresses that can be caused by		
	-		
1	earth-fault currents that could flow in that part of the protective bonding circuit.		
	The cross-sectional area of every protective conductor		P
1 1	which does not form part of a cable or which is not in a		
1	common enclosure with the line conductor shall be not		
	less than		
-	— 2,5 mm2 Cu or 16 mm2 Al if protection against		P
	mechanical damage is provided,		
-	— 4 mm2 Cu or 16 mm2 Al if protection against		N
	mechanical damage is not provided.		
	A protective conductor not forming part of a cable is		P
	considered to be mechanically protected if it is installed		
	in a conduit, trunking or protected in a similar way.		
	Conductive structural parts of equipment in accordance		
I I	with 6.3.2.2 need not be connected to the protective		
1 1	bonding circuit. Conductive structural parts of the		
1	machine need not be connected to the protective bonding		
1	circuit where all the equipment provided is in accordance		
	with 6.3.2.2.		
1	Exposed conductive parts of equipment in accordance		P
1 1	with 6.3.2.3 shall not be connected to the protective		
	bonding circuit.		
1	It is not necessary to connect exposed conductive parts to		N
1	the protective bonding circuit where those parts are		
1	mounted so that they do not constitute a hazard because:		3.7
-	they cannot be touched on large surfaces or grasped		N
	with the hand and they are small in size (less than		

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	approximately 50 mm 50 mm); or	
	— they are located so that either contact with live parts,	N
	or an insulation failure, is unlikely.	
	This applies to small parts such as screws, rivets, and	N
	nameplates and to parts inside an enclosure, irrespective	
	of their size (for example electromagnets of contactors or	
	relays and mechanical parts of devices).	
8.2.2	Protective conductors	-
	Protective conductors shall be identified in accordance See clause 14.2.2 in	P
	with 13.2.2. detail.	
	Copper conductors are preferred. Where a conductor copper used	P
	material other than copper is used, its electrical resistance	1
	per unit length shall not exceed that of the allowable	
	copper conductor and such conductors shall be not less	
	than 16 mm2 in cross-sectional area for reasons of	
	mechanical durability.	
	Metal enclosures or frames or mounting plates of Meet the requirements	P
	electrical equipment, connected to the protective bonding	
	circuit, may be used as protective conductors if they	
	satisfy the following three requirements:	
	• their electrical continuity shall be assured by Meet the requirements	P
	construction or by suitable connection so as to ensure	
	protection against mechanical, chemical or	
	electrochemical deterioration;	
	• they comply with the requirements of 543.1 of IEC Meet the requirements	P
	60364-5-54:2011;	
	• they shall permit the connection of other protective Meet the requirements	P
	conductors at every predetermined tap-off point.	
	The cross-sectional area of protective conductors shall	P
	either be calculated in accordance with 543.1.2 of IEC	
	60364-5-54:2011, or selected in accordance with Table 1	
	(see 5.2). See also 8.2.6. and 17.2 (d) of this document.	
	Each protective conductor shall:	N
	be part of a multicore cable, or;	N
	be in a common enclosure with the line conductor,	N
	or;	
	have a cross-sectional area of at least;	N
	• 2,5 mm2 Cu or 16 mm2 Al if protection against	P
	mechanical damage is provided;	
	• 4 mm2 Cu or 16 mm2 Al if protection against	N

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	mechanical damage is not provided.		
	A protective conductor not forming part of a cable is	l .	P
	considered to be mechanically protected if it is installed		
	in a conduit, trunking or protected in a similar way.		
	The following parts of the machine and its electrical		P
	equipment shall be connected to the protective bonding		
	circuit but shall not be used as protective conductors:		
	• conductive structural parts of the machine;		P
	metal ducts of flexible or rigid construction;		N
	metallic cable sheaths or armouring;		N
	• metallic pipes containing flammable materials such		N
	as gases, liquids, powder.		
	flexible or pliable metal conduits;		N
	• constructional parts subject to mechanical stress in		N
	normal service;		
	• flexible metal parts; support wires; cable trays and		N
	cable ladders.		
8.2.3	Continuity of the protective bonding circuit		P
	Where a part is removed for any reason (for example	III one nart removed	P
	routine maintenance), the protective boliding circuit for	protective continuity	
	The remaining parts shall not be interrupted	not interrupted	
	Compostion and handing naints shall be as designed that	-	
	their current-carrying capacity is not impaired by	Connect to protective	P
	mechanical, chemical, or electrochemical influences.	bonding circuits	
	Where enclosures and conductors of aluminium or		
	aluminium alloys are used, particular consideration		
	should be given to the possibility of electrolytic		
	corrosion.		
	Where the electrical equipment is mounted on lids, doors,		D
	or cover plates, continuity of the protective bonding		P
	circuit shall be ensured and a protective conductor (see		
	8.2.2) is recommended. Where a protective conductor is	l .	
	not provided, fastenings, hinges or sliding contacts		
	designed to have a low resistance shall be used (see	l .	
	18.2.2, Test 1).		
	The continuity of conductors in cables that are exposed to		D
	damage (for example flexible trailing cables) shall be		P
	ensured by appropriate measures (for example		
	monitoring).		

EN 60204-1:2018				
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict	
	For requirements for the continuity of conductors using		P	
	conductor wires, conductor bars and slip-ring assemblies,		1	
	see 12.7.2.			
	The protective bonding circuit shall not incorporate a switching device an overcurrent protective device (for	Meet the requirements	P	
	switching device, an overcurrent protective device (for	rvicet the requirements	1	
	example switch, fuse), or other means of interruption.			
	Exception: links that cannot be opened without the use of		N	
	a tool and that are located in an enclosed electrical		1,	
	operating area may be provided for test or measurement			
	purposes.			
	Where the continuity of the protective bonding circuit can be interrupted by means of removable current collectors	No switching devices or	P	
	be interrupted by ineans of removable editent concetors	any other current	_	
	or plug/socket combinations, the protective bonding	protective devices		
	circuit shall be interrupted by a first make last break			
	contact. This also applies to removable or withdrawable			
0.2.4	plug-in units (see also 13.4.5).			
8.2.4	Protective conductor connecting points		-	
	All protective conductors shall be terminated in		P	
	accordance with 13.1.1. The protective conductor			
	connecting points are not intended, for example, to attach			
	appliances or parts.	E 41	n	
	Each protective conductor connecting point shall be		P	
	marked or labelled as such using the symbol IEC	usea.		
	60417-5019:2006-08 as illustrated in Figure 5:	CDEEN AND VELLO	P	
	or with the letters PE, the graphical symbol being preferred, or by use of the bicolour combination		Г	
	GREEN-AND-YELLOW, or by any combination of			
	these.			
8.2.5	Mobile machines	Not mobile machine	_	
0.2.3	On mobile machines with on-board power supplies, the		N	
	protective conductors, the conductive structural parts of		11	
	the electrical equipment, and those			
	extraneous-conductive-parts which form the structure of			
	the machine shall all be connected to a protective bonding			
	terminal to provide protection against electric shock.			
	Where a mobile machine is also capable of being			
	connected to an external incoming power supply, this			
	protective bonding terminal shall be the connection point			
	for the external protective conductor.			
8.2.6	Additional requirements for electrical equipment having	<10mA	N	

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	earth leakage currents higher than 10 mA		
	Where electrical equipment has an earth leakage current	N	
	that is greater than 10 mA AC or DC in any protective		
	conductor, one or more of the following conditions for		
	the integrity of each section of the associated protective		
	bonding circuit that carries the earth leakage current shall		
	be satisfied:		
	a) the protective conductor is completely enclosed	N	
	within electrical equipment enclosures or otherwise		
	protected throughout its length against mechanical		
	damage;		
	b) the protective conductor has a cross-sectional area of	N	
	at least 10 mm2 Cu or 16 mm2 Al;		
	c) where the protective conductor has a cross-sectional	N	
	area of less than 10 mm2 Cu or 16 mm2 Al, a second		
	protective conductor of at least the same cross-sectional		
	area is provided up to a point where the protective		
	conductor has a cross-sectional area not less than 10 mm2		
	Cu or 16 mm2 Al. This can require that the electrical		
	equipment has a separate terminal for a second protective		
	conductor.		
	d) the supply is automatically disconnected in case of	N	
	loss of continuity of the protective conductor;		
	e) where a plug-socket combination is used, an	N	
	industrial connector in accordance with IEC 60309 series,		
	with adequate strain relief and a minimum protective		
	earthing conductor cross-section of 2,5 mm2 as part of a		
	multi-conductor power cable is provided.		
	A statement shall be given in the instructions for	N	
	installation that the equipment shall be installed as		
	described in this 8.2.6.		
8.3	Measures to restrict the effects of high leakage current	-	_
	The effects of high leakage current can be restricted to the	P	
	equipment having high leakage current by connection of		
	that equipment to a dedicated supply transformer having		
	separate windings. The protective bonding circuit shall be		
	connected to exposed conductive parts of the equipment		
	and, in addition, to the secondary winding of the		
	transformer. The protective conductor(s) between the		
	equipment and the secondary winding of the transformer		
	1 f was seen and a seen and a seen a se		

EN 60204-1:2018				
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict	
	,			
	shall comply with one or more of the arrangements			
	described in 8.2.6.			
8.4	Functional bonding		-	
	Protection against maloperation as a result of insulation	Meet the requirements	P	
	failures can be achieved by connecting to a common			
	conductor in accordance with 9.4.3.1.1.			
	For recommendations regarding functional bonding to	Meet the requirements	P	
	avoid maloperation due to electromagnetic disturbances,			
	see 4.4.2 and Annex H.			
	Functional bonding connecting points should be marked	Meet the requirements	P	
	or labelled as such using the symbol IEC	-		
	60417-5020:2002-10 (see Figure 6).			
9	Control circuits and control functions		_	
9.1	Control circuits		_	
9.1.1	Control circuit supply		_	
	Where control circuits are supplied from an AC source			
	transformers having senarate windings shall be used to	Supplied by isolating	P	
	separate the power supply from the control supply.	transformer		
	Examples include:		_	
	• control transformers having separate windings in		N	
	accordance with IEC 61558-2-2,		1	
	 switch mode power supply units in accordance with 		P	
	IEC 61558-2-16 fitted with transformers having separate		1	
	windings,			
	 low voltage power supplies in accordance with IEC 		N	
	61204-7 fitted with transformers having separate		1	
	windings.			
	Where several transformers are used, it is recommended		N	
	that the windings of those transformers be connected in		11	
	such a manner that the secondary voltages are in phase.			
	Exception: Transformers or switch mode power supply		N	
	units fitted with transformers are not mandatory for		11	
	machines with a single motor starter and/or a maximum			
	of two control devices (for example, interlock device,			
	start/stop control station). Where DC control circuits derived from an AC supply are	Switching Daves	P	
	Where DC control circuits derived from an AC supply are	•	1	
	connected to the protective bonding circuit (see 8.2.1),	Suppry		
	they shall be supplied from a separate winding of the AC			
	control circuit transformer or by another control circuit			
	transformer.			

	EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict	
9.1.2	Control circuit voltages		-	
	The nominal value of the control voltage shall be		P	
	consistent with the correct operation of the control circuit.			
	The nominal voltage of AC control circuits should preferably not exceed		-	
		220V	P	
	— 277 V for circuits with 60 Hz nominal frequency.		N	
	The nominal voltage of DC control circuits should	24V	P	
	preferably not exceed 220 V.	27 V	1	
9.1.3	Protection		-	
	Control circuits shall be provided with overcurrent protection in accordance with 7.2.4 and 7.2.10.		P	
9.2	Control functions		_	
9.2.1	General		_	
9.2.2	Categories of stop functions		_	
,	There are three categories of stop functions as follows:		_	
	ston category 0: stonning by immediate removal of	Power circuit breaker	P	
	— stop category 1: a controlled stop (see 3.1.14) with power available to the machine actuators to achieve the stop and then removal of power when the stop is achieved;	"STOP" button	P	
	— stop category 2: a controlled stop with power remaining available to the machine actuators.		N	
9.2.3	Operation		_	
9.2.3.1	General		-	
	Safety functions and/or protective measures (for example interlocks (see 9.3)) shall be provided where required to reduce the possibility of hazardous situations.	Meet the requirements	P	
	Where a machine has more than one control station, measures shall be provided to ensure that initiation of commands from different control stations do not lead to a hazardous situation.		P	
9.2.3.2	Start		-	
	Start functions shall operate by energizing the relevant circuit.		P	
	The start of an operation shall be possible only when all relevant safety functions and/or protective measures are	Meet the requirements	P	

File No.: TCF22041513MD P113/171

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test Result-Remark	Verdict	
	in place and are operational, except for conditions as described in 9.3.6.		
	For those machines (for example mobile machines) where safety functions and/or protective measures cannot be applied for certain operations, starting of such operations shall be by hold-to-run controls, together with enabling devices, as appropriate.	N	
	The provision of acoustic and/or visual warning signals Meet the requirements before the starting of hazardous machine operation should be considered.	s P	
	Suitable interlocks shall be provided where necessary for Meet the requirements correct sequential starting.	s P	
	In the case of machines requiring the use of more than Only one control devious control station to initiate a start, each of these control stations shall have a separate manually actuated start control device. The conditions to initiate a start shall be:	ce N	
	all required conditions for machine operation shall be met, and	N	
	• all start control devices shall be in the released (off) position, then	N	
	• all start control devices shall be actuated concurrently (see 3.1.7).	N	
9.2.3.3	Stop Stop category 0 and/or stop category 1 and/or stop Meet the requirements category 2 stop functions shall be provided as indicated by the risk assessment and the functional requirements of the machine (see 4.1).	s P	
	Stop functions shall override related start functions.	P	
	Where more than one control station is provided, stop Only one control device commands from any control station shall be effective when required by the risk assessment of the machine.	ce N	
9.2.3.4	Emergency operations (emergency stop, emergency switching off)	-	
9.2.3.4.	General	-	
	Emergency stop and emergency switching off are complementary protective measures that are not primary means of risk reduction for hazards (for example trapping, entanglement, electric shock or burn) at a machine (see ISO 12110).	P	

	EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict	
	This part of IEC 60204 specifies the requirements for the emergency stop and the emergency switching off functions of the emergency operations listed in Annex E, both of which are intended to be initiated by a single human action.		P	
	Once active operation of an emergency stop (see 10.7) or emergency switching off (see 10.8) actuator has ceased following a stop or switching off command, the effect of this command shall be sustained until it is reset. This reset shall be possible only by a manual action at the device where the command has been initiated. The reset of the command shall not restart the machinery but only permit restarting.		P	
	It shall not be possible to restart the machinery until all emergency stop commands have been reset. It shall not be possible to reenergize the machinery until all emergency switching off commands have been reset.		P	
9.2.3.4.	Emergency stop		-	
	Requirements for functional aspects of emergency stop equipment are given in ISO 13850.		P	
	The emergency stop shall function either as a stop category 0 or as a stop category 1. The choice of the stop category of the emergency stop depends on the results of a risk assessment of the machine.		P	
	In addition to the requirements for stop given in 9.2.3.3, the emergency stop function has the following requirements:		-	
	• it shall override all other functions and operations in all modes;		P	
	• it shall stop the hazardous motion as quickly as practicable without creating other hazards;		P	
	reset shall not initiate a restart.		P	
9.2.3.4.	Emergency switching off		-	
	The functional aspects of emergency switching off are given in 536.4 of IEC 60364-5-53:2001.		-	
	Emergency switching off should be provided where:		_	
	• basic protection (for example for conductor wires, conductor bars, slip-ring assemblies, controlgear in		N	

	EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict	
	electrical operating areas) is achieved only by placing out of reach or by obstacles (see 6.2.6); or			
	• there is the possibility of other hazards or damage caused by electricity.		N	
	Emergency switching off is accomplished by switching off the relevant supply by electromechanical switching devices, effecting a stop category 0 of machine actuators connected to this incoming supply. When a machine cannot tolerate this category 0 stop, it may be necessary to provide other measures, for example basic protection, so that emergency switching off is not necessary.		N	
9.2.3.5	Operating modes		-	
	Each machine can have one or more operating modes (for example manual mode, automatic mode, setting mode, maintenance mode) determined by the type of machine and its application.		N	
	Where machinery has been designed and constructed to allow its use in several control or operating modes requiring different protective measures and having a different impact on safety, it shall be fitted with a mode selector which can be locked in each position (for example key operated switch). Each position of the selector shall be clearly identifiable and shall correspond to a single operating or control mode.		N	
	The selector may be replaced by another selection method which restricts the use of certain functions of the machinery to certain categories of operator (for example access code).		N	
	Mode selection by itself shall not initiate machine operation. A separate actuation of the start control shall be required.		N	
	For each specific operating mode, the relevant safety functions and/or protective measures shall be implemented.		N	
	Indication of the selected operating mode shall be provided (for example the position of a mode selector, the provision of an indicating light, a visual display indication).		N	
9.2.3.6	Monitoring of command actions		-	
	Movement or action of a machine or part of a machine		N	

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	-		
	that can result in a hazardous situation shall be monitored		
	by providing, for example, overtravel limiters, motor		
	overspeed detection, mechanical overload detection or		
	anti-collision devices.		
9.2.3.7	Hold-to-run controls		N
	Hold-to-run controls shall require continuous actuation of		N
	the control device(s) to achieve operation.		
9.2.3.8	Two-hand control	No such control	N
	Three types of two-hand control are defined in ISO		N
	13851, the selection of which is determined by the risk		
	assessment. These shall have the following features:		
	Type I: this type requires:		N
	• the provision of two control devices and their		N
	concurrent actuation by both hands;		
	• continuous concurrent actuation during the hazardous		N
	situation;		
	• machine operation shall cease upon the release of		N
	either one or both of the control devices when hazardous		
	situations are still present.		
	A Type I two-hand control device is not considered to be		N
	suitable for the initiation of hazardous operation.		
	Type II: a Type I control requiring the release of both		N
	control devices before machine operation can be		
	reinitiated.		
	Type III: a Type II control requiring concurrent actuation		N
	of the control devices as follows:		
	• it shall be necessary to actuate the control devices		N
	within a certain time limit of each other, not exceeding		
	0,5 s;		
	• where this time limit is exceeded, both control		N
	devices shall be released before machine operation can be		
0.000	initiated.	.	
9.2.3.9	Enabling control	No such control	N
	Enabling control (see also 10.9) is a manually activated		N
	control function interlock that:		N.T.
	a) when activated allows a machine operation to be		N
	initiated by a separate start control, and		N.T.
	b) when de-activated		N
	• initiates a stop function, and		N
	• prevents initiation of machine operation.		N

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	Enabling control shall be so arranged as to minimize the		N
	possibility of defeating, for example by requiring the		
	de-activation of the enabling control device before		
	machine operation may be reinitiated.		
9.2.3.1	Combined start and stop controls		N
0			
	Push-buttons and similar control devices that, when		N
	operated, alternately initiate and stop motion shall only be		
	provided for functions which cannot result in a hazardous		
	situation.		
9.2.4	Cableless control system (CCS)	No such system	N
9.2.4.1	General requirements		-
	Subclause 9.2.4 deals with the functional requirements of		N
	control systems employing cableless (for example radio,		
	infra-red) techniques for transmitting control signals and		
	data between operator control station(s) and other parts of		
	the control system(s).		
	Transmission reliability requirements can be necessary		N
	for safety functions of a CCS that rely on data		
	transmission (for example, safety-related active stop,		
	motion commands).		
	The CCS shall have functionality and a response time		N
	suitable for the application based on the risk assessment.		
9.2.4.2	Monitoring the ability of a cableless control system to		-
	control a machine		
	The ability of a cableless control system (CCS) to control		N
	a machine shall be automatically monitored, either		
	continuously or at suitable intervals. The status of this		
	ability shall be clearly indicated (for example, by an		
	indicating light, a visual display indication, etc.)		
	If the communication signal is degraded in a manner that		N
	might lead to the loss of the ability of a CCS to control a		
	machine (e.g., reduced signal level, low battery power) a		
	warning to the operator shall be provided before the		
	ability of the CCS to control a machine is lost.		
	When the ability of a CCS to control a machine has been		N
	lost for a time that is determined from a risk assessment		
	of the application, an automatic stop of the machine shall		
	be initiated.		
	Restoration of the ability of a CCS to control a machine		N

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	shall not restart the machine. Restart shall require a deliberate action, for example manual actuation of a start button.		
9.2.4.3	Control limitation		-
	Measures shall be taken (e.g. coded transmission) to prevent the machine from responding to signals other than those from the intended cableless operator control station(s).		N
	Cableless operator control station(s) shall only control the intended machine(s) and shall affect only the intended machine functions.		N
9.2.4.4	Use of multiple cableless operator control stations		-
	When more than one cableless operator control station is used to control a machine, then:		N
	• only one cableless operator control station shall be enabled at a time except as necessary for the operation of the machine;		N
	• transfer of control from one cableless operator control station to another shall require a deliberate manual action at the control station that has control;		N
	• during machine operation, transfer of control shall only be possible when both cableless operator control stations are set to the same mode of machine operation and/or function(s) of the machine;		N
	• transfer of control shall not change the selected mode of machine operation and/or function(s) of the machine;		N
	• each cableless operator control station that has control of the machine shall be provided with an indication that it has control (by for example, the provision of an indicating light, a visual display indication).		N
9.2.4.5	Portable cableless operator control stations		-
	Portable cableless operator control stations shall be provided with means (for example key operated switch, access code) to prevent unauthorized use.		N
	Each machine under cableless control should have an indication when it is under cableless control.		N
	When a portable cableless operator control station can be connected to one or more of several machines, means shall be provided on the portable cableless operator		N

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	control station to select which machine(s) is to be connected. Selecting a machine to be connected shall not initiate control commands.		
9.2.4.6	Deliberate disabling of cableless operator control stations		-
	Where a cableless operator control station is disabled when under control, the associated machine shall meet the requirements for loss of ability of a CCS to control a machine in 9.2.4.2.		N
	Where it is necessary to disable a cableless operator control station without interrupting machine operation, means shall be provided (for example on the cableless operator control station) to transfer control to another fixed or portable control station.		N
9.2.4.7	Emergency stop devices on portable cableless operator control stations		-
	Emergency stop devices on portable cableless operator control stations shall not be the sole means of initiating the emergency stop function of a machine.		N
	Confusion between active and inactive emergency stop devices shall be avoided by appropriate design and information for use. See also ISO 13850.		N
9.2.4.8	Emergency stop reset		-
	Restarting of cableless control after power loss, disabling and re-enabling, loss of communication, or failure of parts of the CCS shall not result in a reset of an emergency stop condition.		N
	The instructions for use shall state that the reset of an emergency stop condition initiated by a portable cableless operator control station shall only be performed when it can be seen that the reason for initiation has been cleared.		N
	Depending on the risk assessment, in addition to the resetting of the emergency stop actuator on the portable cableless operator control station, one or more supplementary fixed reset devices should be provided.		N
9.3	Protective interlocks		-
9.3.1	Reclosing or resetting of an interlocking safeguard		-
	The reclosing or resetting of an interlocking safeguard shall not initiate hazardous machine operation.		N
9.3.2	Exceeding operating limits		-
	Where an operating limit (for example speed, pressure,		N

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	position) can be exceeded leading to a hazardous		
	situation, means shall be provided to detect when a		
	predetermined limit(s) is exceeded and initiate an		
	appropriate control action.		
9.3.3	Operation of auxiliary functions		-
	The correct operation of auxiliary functions shall be		N
	checked by appropriate devices (for example pressure		
	sensors).		
	Where the non-operation of a motor or device for an		N
	auxiliary function (for example lubrication, supply of		
	coolant, swarf removal) can cause a hazardous situation,		
	or cause damage to the machine or to the work in		
	progress, appropriate interlocking shall be provided.		
9.3.4	Interlocks between different operations and for contrary		-
	motions		
	All contactors, relays, and other control devices that		N
	control elements of the machine and that can cause a		
	hazardous situation when actuated at the same time (for		
	example those which initiate contrary motion), shall be		
	interlocked against incorrect operation.		
	Reversing contactors (for example those controlling the		N
	direction of rotation of a motor) shall be interlocked in		
	such a way that in normal service no short-circuit can		
	occur when switching.		
	Where, for safety or for continuous operation, certain		N
	functions on the machine are required to be interrelated,		
	proper co-ordination shall be ensured by suitable		
	interlocks. For a group of machines working together in a		
	co-ordinated manner and having more than one		
	controller, provision shall be made to co-ordinate the		
	operations of the controllers as necessary.		
	Where a failure of a mechanical brake actuator can result		N
	in the brake being applied when the associated machine		
	actuator is energized and a hazardous situation can result,		
	interlocks shall be provided to switch off the machine		
0.2.5	actuator.		
9.3.5	Reverse current braking		-
	Where braking of a motor is accomplished by current		N
	reversal, measures shall be provided to prevent the motor		
	starting in the opposite direction at the end of braking		

	EN 60204-1:2018	
Clause	Requirement-Test Result-Ren	mark Verdict
	where that reversal can cause a hazardous situation or	
	damage to the machine or to the work in progress. For	
	this purpose, a device operating exclusively as a function	
	of time is not permitted.	
	Control circuits shall be so arranged that rotation of a	N
	motor shaft, for example by applying a manual force or	
	any other force causing the shaft to rotate after it has	
	stopped, shall not result in a hazardous situation.	
9.3.6	Suspension of safety functions and/or protective	_
	measures	
	Where it is necessary to suspend safety functions and/or	_
	protective measures (for example for setting or	
	maintenance purposes), the control or operating mode	
	selector shall simultaneously:	
	disable all other operating (control) modes;	N
	• permit operation only by the use of a hold-to-run	N
	device or by a similar control device positioned so as to	
	permit sight of the hazardous elements;	
	• permit operation of the hazardous elements only in	N
	reduced risk conditions (e.g. reduced speed, reduced	
	power / force, step-by-step operation, e.g. with a limited	
	movement control device);	
	• prevent any operation of hazardous functions by	N
	voluntary or involuntary action on the machine's sensors.	
	If these four conditions cannot be fulfilled	N
	simultaneously, the control or operating mode selector	
	shall activate other protective measures designed and	
	constructed to ensure a safe intervention zone. In	
	addition, the operator shall be able to control operation of	
	the parts he is working on from the adjustment point.	
9.4	Control functions in the event of failure	
9.4.1	General requirements	-
	Where failures or disturbances in the electrical equipment Meet the requir	rements P
	can cause a hazardous situation or damage to the machine	
	or to the work in progress, appropriate measures shall be	
	taken to minimize the probability of the occurrence of	
	such failures or disturbances. The required measures and	
	the extent to which they are implemented, either	
	individually or in combination, depend on the level of	
	risk associated with the respective application (see 4.1).	

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	Examples of such measures that can be appropriate		
	include but are not limited to:		_
	• protective interlocking of the electrical circuit;	Not used	N
	• use of proven circuit techniques and components (see	Conform to relevant	P
	9.4.2.2);	IEC standards	1
	• provision of partial or complete redundancy (see		
	9.4.2.3) or diversity (see 9.4.2.4);		N
	• provision for functional tests (see 9.4.2.5).	C 1 1.1 1	n.
	, ,	Comply with clause	P
		18.6	
	The electrical control system(s) shall have an appropriate		P
	performance that has been determined from the risk		
	assessment of the machine.		
	The requirements for safety-related control functions of IEC 62061 and/or ISO 13849-1, ISO 13849-2 shall apply.	Meet the requirements.	P
	Where functions performed by the electrical control		N
	system(s) have safety implications but application of IEC		
	62061 leads to a required safety integrity less than that		
	required by SIL 1, compliance with the requirements of		
	this part of IEC 60204 can lead to an adequate		
	performance of the electrical control system(s).		
	Where memory retention is achieved for example, by	No memory retention is	N
	pattery power, measures shall be taken to prevent	achieved	1,
	hazardous situations arising from failure, undervoltage or		
	removal of the battery.		
	Means shall be provided to prevent unauthorized or	No memory retention is	N
	inadvertent memory alteration by, for example, requiring	achieved.	
0.4.2	the use of a key, access code or tool.		
9.4.2	Measures to minimize risk in the event of failure		-
9.4.2.1	General		-
	Measures to minimize risk in the event of failure include		-
	but are not limited to:		D
	• use of proven circuit techniques and components;		P
	provisions of partial or complete redundancy;		N
	provision of diversity; provision for for the stand tests.		N
0.422	• provision for functional tests.		Р
9.4.2.2	Use of proven circuit techniques and components		-
	These measures include but are not limited to:		- D
	 bonding of control circuits to the protective bonding 		P

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	circuit for functional purposes (see 9.4.3.1.1 and Figure		
	4);		D
	• connection of control devices in accordance with		P
	9.4.3.1.1;		D
	• stopping by de-energizing;		P P
	• the switching of all control circuit conductors (for		P
	example both sides of a coil) of the device being controlled;		
	• switching devices having direct opening action (see		P
	IEC 60947-5-1);		1
	• monitoring by:		_
	— use of mechanically linked contacts (see IEC		N
	60947-5-1);		
	— use of mirror contacts (see IEC 60947-4-1);		P
	• circuit design to reduce the possibility of failures		P
	causing undesirable operations.		
9.4.2.3	Provisions of partial or complete redundancy		N
7.1.2.3	By providing partial or complete redundancy, it is		N
	possible to minimize the probability that one single		
	failure in the electrical circuit can result in a hazardous		
	situation. Redundancy can be effective in normal		
	operation (on-line redundancy) or designed as special		
	circuits that take over the protective function (off-line		
	redundancy) only where the operating function fails.		
	Where off-line redundancy which is not active during		N
	normal operation is provided, suitable measures shall be		
	taken to ensure that those control circuits are available		
	when required.		
9.4.2.4	Provision of diversity		N
	The use of control circuits having different principles of		N
	operation, or using different types of components or		
	devices can reduce the probability of hazards resulting		
	from faults and/or failures. Examples include:		
	— the use of a combination of normally open and		N
	normally closed contacts;		
	— the use of different types of control devices in the		N
	circuit(s);		
	— the combination of electromechanical and electronic		N
	equipment in redundant configurations.		
	The combination of electrical and non-electrical systems		N

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
			1
	(for example mechanical, hydraulic, pneumatic) may		
0.40.5	perform the redundant function and provide the diversity.		
9.4.2.5	Provision for functional tests		-
	Functional tests may be carried out automatically by the	Comply with clause	P
	control system, of manually by inspection of tests at	18.6	
	start-up and at predetermined intervals, or a combination		
0.4.0	as appropriate (see also 17.2 and 18.6).		
9.4.3	Protection against malfunction of control circuits		-
	Insulation faults		-
9.4.3.1.	General		-
1			
	Measures shall be provided to reduce the probability that	-	P
	insulation faults on any control circuit can cause		
	malfunction such as unintentional starting, potentially		
	hazardous motions, or prevent stopping of the machine.		
	The measures to meet the requirements include but are		-
	not limited to the following methods:		
	— method a) Earthed control circuits fed by		N
	transformers;		
	— method b) Non-earthed control circuits fed by		N
	transformers;		
	— method c) Control circuits fed by transformer with an		N
	earthed centre-tap winding;		
	— method d) Control circuits not fed by a transformer.		P
9.4.3.1.	Method a) – Earthed control circuits fed by transformers		-
2			
	The common conductor shall be connected to the		N
	protective bonding circuit at the point of supply. All		
	contacts, solid state elements, etc., which are intended to		
	operate an electromagnetic or other device (for example,		
	a relay, indicator light) are to be inserted between the		
	switched conductor of the control circuit supply and one		
	terminal of the coil or device. The other terminal of the		
	coil or device is connected directly to the common		
	conductor of the control circuit supply without any		
	switching elements (see Figure 7).		
	Exception: Contacts of protective devices may be		N
	connected between the common conductor and the coils,		
	provided that the connection is very short (for example in		
	the same enclosure) so that an earth fault is unlikely (for		

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	example overload relays directly fitted to contactors).	
9.4.3.1.	Method b) - Non-earthed control circuits fed by	N
3	transformers	
	Control circuits fed from a control transformer that is not	-
	connected to the protective bonding circuit shall either:	
	1) have 2-pole control switches that operate on both	N
	conductors, see Figure 8; or	
	2) be provided with a device, for example an insulation	N
	monitoring device, that interrupts the circuit	
	automatically in the event of an earth fault, see Figure 9;	
	or	
	3) where an interruption as per item 2 above would	N
	increase the risk, for example when continued operation	
	is required during the first fault to earth, it can be	
	sufficient to provide an insulation monitoring device (e.g.	
	in accordance with IEC 61557-8) that will initiate an	
	acoustic and optical signal at the machine, see Figure 10.	
	Requirements for the procedure to be performed by the	
	machine user in response to this alarm shall be described	
	in the information for use.	
9.4.3.1.	Method c) - Control circuits fed by transformer with an	N
4	earthed centre-tap winding	
	Control circuits fed from a control transformer with its	N
	centre-tap winding connected to the protective bonding	-
	circuit shall have overcurrent protective devices that	
	break both the conductors.	
	The control switches shall be 2-pole types that operate on	N
	both conductors.	
9.4.3.1.	Method d) – Control circuits not fed by a transformer	N
5	and the second of the second o	
	Control circuits that are not fed by a control transformer	N
	or switch mode power supply units fitted with	
	transformers having separate windings in accordance	
	with IEC 61558-2-16 are only allowed for machines with	
	a maximum of one motor starter and/or maximum of two	
	control devices, in accordance with 9.1.1.	
	Depending on the earthing of the supply system the	
	possible cases are:	_
	1) directly connected to an earthed supply system (TN-	N
	or TT-system) and:	19
	or re-system, and.	

	EN 60204-1:2018	
Clause	Requirement-Test Result-Remark	Verdict
	a) being powered between a line conductor and the neutral conductor, see Figure 12; or	N
	b) being powered between two line conductors, see Figure 13; or	N
	2) directly connected to a supply system that is not earthed or is earthed through a high impedance (IT-system) and:	N
	a) being powered between a line conductor and the neutral conductor, see Figure 14; or	N
	b) being powered between two line conductors, see Figure 15.	N
	Method d1b) requires multi-pole control switches that switch all live conductors in order to avoid an unintentional start in case of an earth fault in the control circuit.	N
	Method d2) requires that a device shall be provided that interrupts the circuit automatically in the event of an earth fault.	N
9.4.3.2	Voltage interruptions	-
	Where the control system uses a memory device(s), Any loss of memory proper functioning in the event of power failure shall be can't result in a ensured (for example by using a non-volatile memory) to hazardous condition. prevent any loss of memory that can result in a hazardous situation. See also 7.5.	Р
9.4.3.3	Loss of circuit continuity	ı
	Where the loss of continuity of control circuits depending upon sliding contacts can result in a hazardous situation, appropriate measures shall be taken (for example by duplication of the sliding contacts).	N
10	Operator interface and machine-mounted control devices	-
10.1	General	-
10.1.1	General requirements	_
	Control devices for operator interface shall, as far as is Comply with practicable, be selected, mounted, and identified or coded requirements in accordance with IEC 61310 series.	P
	The possibility of inadvertent operation shall be Comply with minimized by, for example, positioning of devices, requirements suitable design, provision of additional protective	P

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	measures. Particular consideration shall be given to the		
	selection, arrangement, programming and use of operator		
	input devices such as touchscreens, keypads and		
	keyboards for the control of hazardous machine		
	operations, and of sensors (for example position sensors)		
	that can initiate machine operation. Further information		
	can be found in IEC 60447.		
	Ergonomic principles shall be taken into account in the	Comply with	P
	location of operator interface devices.	requirements	
10.1.2	Location and mounting		-
	As far as is practicable, machine-mounted control devices		-
	shall be:		
	• readily accessible for service and maintenance;		P
	• mounted in such a manner as to minimize the	Comply with	P
	possibility of damage from activities such as material	requirements	
	handling.		
	The actuators of hand-operated control devices shall be		-
	selected and installed so that:		
	• they are not less than 0,6 m above the servicing level		P
	and are within easy reach of the normal working position		
	of the operator;		
	• the operator is not placed in a hazardous situation	Comply with	P
	1 6	requirements	
	The actuators of foot-operated control devices shall be		-
	selected and installed so that:		
	• they are within easy reach of the normal working	= :	P
	1 '	requirements	
	• the operator is not placed in a hazardous situation	= *	P
	1 6	requirements	
10.1.3	Protection		-
	The degree of protection (IP rating in accordance with		P
	IEC 60529) together with other appropriate measures		
	shall provide protection against:		
	• the effects of liquids, vapours, or gases found in the		P
	physical environment or used on the machine;		
	• the ingress of contaminants (for example swarf, dust,		P
	particulate matter).		
	In addition, the operator interface control devices shall		P
	have a minimum degree of protection against contact		
	with live parts of IPXXD in accordance with IEC 60529.		

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
10.1.4	Position sensors		-
	Position sensors (for example position switches,		P
	proximity switches) shall be so arranged that they will not		
	be damaged in the event of overtravel.		
	Position sensors in circuits with safety-related control		P
	functions (for example, to maintain the safe condition of		
	the machine or prevent hazardous situations arising at the		
	machine) shall have direct opening action (see IEC		
	60947-5-1) or shall provide similar reliability (see 9.4.2).		
10.1.5	Portable and pendant control stations		-
	Portable and pendant operator control stations and their		N
	control devices shall be so selected and arranged as to		
	minimize the possibility of machine operations caused by		
	inadvertent actuation, shocks and vibrations (for example		
	if the operator control station is dropped or strikes an		
	obstruction) (see also 4.4.8).		
10.2	Actuators		-
10.2.1	Colours		-
	Actuators (see 3.1.1) shall be colour-coded as follows.		P
	The colours for START/ON actuators should be WHITE,	Comply with	P
	GREY, BLACK or GREEN with a preference for	requirements	
	WHITE. RED shall not be used.		
	The colour RED shall be used for emergency stop and		N
	emergency switching off actuators (including supply		
	disconnecting devices where it is foreseen that they are		
	for use in an emergency). If a background exists		
	immediately around the actuator, then this background		
	shall be coloured YELLOW. The combination of a RED		
	actuator with a YELLOW background shall only be used		
	for emergency operation devices.		
	The colours for STOP/OFF actuators should be BLACK,	Comply with	P
	GREY, or WHITE with a preference for BLACK.	requirements	
	GREEN shall not be used. RED is permitted, but it is		
	recommended that RED is not used near an emergency		
	operation device.		
	WHITE, GREY, or BLACK are the preferred colours for	Comply with	P
	actuators that alternately act as START/ON and	requirements	
	STOP/OFF actuators. The colours RED, YELLOW, or		
	GREEN shall not be used.		

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	WHITE, GREY, or BLACK are the preferred colours for		N
	actuators that cause operation while they are actuated and		
	cease the operation when they are released (for example		
	hold-to-run). The colours RED, YELLOW, or GREEN		
	shall not be used.		
	Reset actuators shall be BLUE, WHITE, GREY, or		N
	BLACK. Where they also act as a STOP/OFF actuator,		
	the colours WHITE, GREY, or BLACK are preferred		
	with the main preference being for BLACK. GREEN		
	shall not be used.		
	The colour YELLOW is reserved for use in abnormal		N
	conditions, for example, in the event of an abnormal		
	condition of the process, or to interrupt an automatic		
	cycle.		
	Where the same colour WHITE, GREY, or BLACK is		N
	used for various functions (for example WHITE for		
	START/ON and for STOP/OFF actuators) a		
	supplementary means of coding (for example shape,		
	position, symbol) shall be used for the identification of		
	actuators.		
10.2.2	Markings		-
	In addition to the functional identification as described in	Comply with	P
	16.3, recommended symbols to be placed near to or	requirements	
	preferably directly on certain actuators are given in Table		
	2 or 3.		
10.3	Indicator lights and displays		-
10.3.1	General		-
	Indicator lights and displays serve to give the following		_
	types of information:		
	— indication: to attract the operator's attention or to		P
	indicate that a certain task should be performed. The		
	colours RED, YELLOW, BLUE, and GREEN are		
	normally used in this mode; for flashing indicator lights		
	and displays, see 10.3.3.		
	— confirmation: to confirm a command, or a condition,		P
	or to confirm the termination of a change or transition		
	period. The colours BLUE and WHITE are normally used		
	in this mode and GREEN may be used in some cases.		
	Indicator lights and displays shall be selected and	Comply with	P

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	installed in such a manner as to be visible from the	requirements	
	normal position of the operator (see also IEC 61310-1).		
	Circuits used for visual or audible devices used to warn	Comply with	P
	persons of an impending hazardous event shall be fitted	requirements	
	with facilities to check the operability of these devices.		
10.3.2	Colours		-
	Indicator lights should be colour-coded with respect to	Comply with	P
	the condition (status) of the machine in accordance with	requirements	
	Table 4.		
	Indicating towers on machines should have the applicable		P
	colours in the following order from the top down; RED,		
	YELLOW, BLUE, GREEN and WHITE.		
10.3.3	Flashing lights and displays		-
	For further distinction or information and especially to		N
	give additional emphasis, flashing lights and displays can		
	be provided for the following purposes:		
	— to attract attention;		N
	— to request immediate action;		N
	— to indicate a discrepancy between the command and		N
	actual state;		
	— to indicate a change in process (flashing during		N
	transition).		
	It is recommended that higher flashing frequencies are	I .	N
	used for higher priority information (see IEC 60073 for		
	recommended flashing rates and pulse/pause ratios).		
	Where flashing lights or displays are used to provide		N
	higher priority information, additional acoustic warnings		
	should be considered.		
10.4	Illuminated push-buttons		-
			N.T.
	Illuminated push-button actuators shall be colour-coded		N
	in accordance with 10.2.1. Where there is difficulty in		
	assigning an appropriate colour, WHITE shall be used.	D 1)
	The colour of active emergency stop actuators shall	Ked	N
10.5	remain RED regardless of the state of the illumination.		3.7
10.5	Rotary control devices		N
	Devices having a rotational member, such as		N
	potentiometers and selector switches, shall have means of		
	prevention of rotation of the stationary member. Friction		
		-10	

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	alone shall not be considered sufficient.		
10.6	Start devices		P
	Actuators used to initiate a start function or the movement of machine elements (for example slides, spindles, carriers) shall be constructed and mounted so as to minimize inadvertent operation.		N
10.7	Emergency stop devices		-
10.7.1	Location of emergency stop devices		-
	Devices for emergency stop shall be readily accessible.		P
	Emergency stop devices shall be provided at each location where the initiation of an emergency stop can be required.	I I	P
	There can be circumstances where confusion can occur between active and inactive emergency stop devices caused by, for example, unplugging or otherwise disabling an operator control station. In such cases, means (for example, design and information for use) shall be provided to minimise confusion.		P
10.7.2	Types of emergency stop device		-
	The types of device for emergency stop include, but are not limited to:		-
	• a push-button device for actuation by the palm or the fist (e.g. mushroom head type);		P
	• a pull-cord operated switch;		N
	• a pedal-operated switch without a mechanical guard. The devices shall be in accordance with IEC 60947-5-5.		N
10.7.3	Operation of the supply disconnecting device to effect emergency stop		-
	Where a stop category 0 is suitable, the supply disconnecting device may serve the function of emergency stop where:	I I	-
	it is readily accessible to the operator; and		P
	• it is of the type described in 5.3.2 a), b), c), or d).		P
	Where intended for emergency use, the supply disconnecting device shall meet the colour requirements of 10.2.1.		P
10.8	Emergency switching off devices	No such device	-

File No.: TCF22041513MD P132/171

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

10.8.1	Location of emergency switching off devices		N
	Emergency switching off devices shall be located as		N
	necessary for the given application. Normally, those		
	devices will be located separate from operator control		
	stations. Where confusion can occur between emergency		
	stop and emergency switching off devices, means shall be		
	provided to minimise confusion.		
10.8.2	Types of emergency switching off device		-
	The types of device for initiation of emergency switching		-
	off include:		
	• a push-button operated switch with a palm or		N
	mushroom head type of actuator;		
	a pull-cord operated switch.		N
	The devices shall have direct opening action (see Annex		N
	K of IEC 60947-5-1:2003 and IEC		
	60947-5-1:2003/AMD1:2009).		
10.8.3	Local operation of the supply disconnecting device to		_
	effect emergency switching off		
	Where the supply disconnecting device is to be locally		N
	operated for emergency switching off, it shall be readily		
	accessible and shall meet the colour requirements of		
	10.2.1.		
10.9	Enabling control device	No such device	-
	The enabling control function is described in 9.2.3.9.		N
	Enabling control devices shall be selected and arranged		N
	so as to minimize the possibility of defeating.		
	Enabling control devices shall be selected that have the		-
	following features:		
	 designed in accordance with ergonomic principles; 		N
	— for a two-position type:		N
	• position 1: off-function of the switch (actuator is not		N
	operated);		= *
	• position 2: enabling function (actuator is operated).		N
	— for a three-position type:		N
	• position 1: off-function of the switch (actuator is not		N
			- '
	operated);		
	operated);position 2: enabling function (actuator is operated in		N

File No.: TCF22041513MD P133/171

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	• position 3: off-function (actuator is operated past its mid position);		N
	• when returning from position 3 to position 2, the enabling function is not activated.		N
11	Controlgear: location, mounting, and enclosures		-
11.1	General requirements		-
	All controlgear shall be located and mounted so as to facilitate:		-
	 its accessibility and maintenance; 	Accessibility and maintain ability	Р
	— its protection against the external influences or conditions under which it is intended to operate;		Р
	 operation and maintenance of the machine and its associated equipment. 	Easy access for operation and maintenance	P
11.2	Location and mounting		-
11.2.1	Accessibility and maintenance		-
	All items of controlgear shall be placed and oriented so that they can be identified without moving them or the wiring. For items that require checking for correct operation or that are liable to need replacement, those actions should be possible without dismantling other equipment or parts of the machine (except opening doors or removing covers, barriers or obstacles). Terminals not part of controlgear components or devices shall also conform to these requirements.	Part list provided	P
	All controlgear shall be mounted so as to facilitate its operation and maintenance. Where a special tool is necessary to adjust, maintain, or remove a device, such a tool shall be supplied. Where access is required for regular maintenance or adjustment, the relevant devices shall be located between 0,4 m and 2,0 m above the servicing level. It is recommended that terminals be at least 0,2 m above the servicing level and be so placed that conductors and cables can be easily connected to them. No devices except devices for operating, indicating, measuring, and cooling shall be mounted on doors or on access covers of enclosures that are expected to be		P
	removed.		
	Where control devices are connected through plug-in		P

File No.: TCF22041513MD P134/171

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
			1
	arrangements, their association shall be made clear by		
	type (shape), marking or reference designation, singly or		
	in combination (see 13.4.5).		
	Plug-in devices that are handled during normal operation		P
	shall be provided with non- interchangeable features		
	where the lack of such a facility can result in		
	malfunctioning.		
	Plug/socket combinations that are handled during normal		N
	operation shall be located and mounted so as to provide		
	unobstructed access.		
	Test points for connection of test equipment, where		-
	provided, shall be:		
	— mounted so as to provide unobstructed access;		P
	— clearly identified to correspond with the		P
	documentation;		
	— adequately insulated;		P
	— sufficiently spaced.		P
11.2.2	Physical separation or grouping		-
	Non-electrical parts and devices, not directly associated	-	P
	with the electrical equipment, shall not be located within		
	enclosures containing controlgear. Devices such as	= =	
	solenoid valves should be separated from the other		
	electrical equipment (for example in a separate		
	compartment).		
	Control devices mounted in the same location and		P
	connected to the power circuits, or to both power and		
	control circuits, should be grouped separately from those		
	connected only to the control circuits.		
	Terminals shall be separated into groups for:		-
	— power circuits;		P
	— control circuits of the machine;		P
	— other control circuits, fed from external sources (for		P
	example for interlocking).		
	The groups may be mounted adjacently, provided that	=	P
	each group can be readily identified (for example by		
	markings, by use of different sizes, by use of barriers or		
	by colours).		
	When arranging the location of devices (including	-	P
	interconnections), the clearances and creepage distances		
	specified for them by the supplier shall be maintained,		

P136/171

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	taking into account the external influences or conditions		
	of the physical environment.		
11.2.3	Heating effects		-
	The temperature rise inside electrical equipment	Air condition are used.	P
	enclosures shall not exceed the ambient temperature		
	specified by the component manufacturers.		
	Heat generating components (for example heat sinks,		P
	power resistors) shall be so located that the temperature		
	of each component in the vicinity remains within the		
11.0	permitted limit.		
11.3	Degrees of protection	X 6	-
	The protection of controlgear against ingress of solid	•	P
	foreign objects and of liquids shall be adequate taking		
	into account the external influences under which the		
	machine is intended to operate (i.e. the location and the		
	physical environmental conditions) and shall be sufficient		
	against dust, coolants, lubricants and swarf. Enclosures of controlgear shall provide a degree of		P
	protection of at least IP22 (see IEC 60529).		1
	Exception: an enclosure providing a minimum degree of	IP54	P
	protection IP22 is not required where:	11 54	1
	a) an electrical operating area provides an appropriate	Meet the requirements	P
	degree of protection against ingress of solids and liquids,	=	
	or:		
	b) removable collectors on conductor wire or conductor	Meet the requirements	P
	bar systems are used and the measures of 12.7.1 are	=	
	applied.		
11.4	Enclosures, doors and openings		-
	Enclosures shall be constructed using materials capable	Meet the requirements	P
	of withstanding the mechanical, electrical and thermal		
	stresses as well as the effects of humidity and other		
	environmental factors that are likely to be encountered in		
	normal service.		
	Fasteners used to secure doors and covers should be of	Meet the requirements	P
	the captive type.		
	Windows of enclosures shall be of a material suitable to		N
	withstand expected mechanical stress and chemical		
	attack.		
	It is recommended that enclosure doors having vertical		N
	hinges be not wider than 0,9 m, with an angle of opening		

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

of at least 95°.	
The joints or gaskets of doors, lids, covers and enclosures Meet the requirements	P
shall withstand the chemical effects of the aggressive	
liquids, vapours, or gases used on the machine. The	
means provided to maintain the degree of protection of an	
enclosure on doors, lids and covers that require opening	
or removal for operation or maintenance shall:	
• be securely attached to either the door/cover or the Meet the requirements	P
enclosure;	
• not deteriorate due to removal or replacement of the Meet the requirements	P
door or the cover, and so impair the degree of protection.	
Where openings in enclosures are provided (for example, Meet the requirements	P
for cable access), including those towards the floor or Rubber pad used.	
foundation or to other parts of the machine, means shall	
be provided to ensure the degree of protection specified	
for the equipment. Openings for cable entries shall be	
easy to re-open on site. A suitable opening may be	
provided in the base of enclosures within the machine so	
that moisture due to condensation can drain away.	
There shall be no opening between enclosures containing Meet the requirements	F
electrical equipment and compartments containing	
coolant, lubricating or hydraulic fluids, or those into	
which oil, other liquids, or dust can penetrate. This	
requirement does not apply to electrical devices	
specifically designed to operate in oil (for example	
electromagnetic clutches) nor to electrical equipment in	
which coolants are used.	
Where there are holes in an enclosure for mounting Rubber pad used.	F
purposes, means may be necessary to ensure that after	
mounting, the holes do not impair the required protection.	
Equipment that, in normal or abnormal operation, can	-
attain a surface temperature sufficient to cause a risk of	
fire or harmful effect to an enclosure material shall:	
— be located within an enclosure that will withstand, Meet the requirements	F
without risk of fire or harmful effect, such temperatures	
as can be generated; and	
— be mounted and located at a sufficient distance from Meet the requirements	F
adjacent equipment so as to allow safe dissipation of heat	
(see also 11.2.3); or	
— be otherwise screened by material that can withstand, Meet the requirements	P

File No.: TCF22041513MD P137/171

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	without risk of fire or harmful effect, the heat emitted by		
	the equipment.		
11.5	Access to electrical equipment		-
	Doors in gangways and for access to electrical operating areas shall:		-
	— be at least 0,7 m wide and 2,0 m high;		N
	— open outwards;		N
	— have a means (for example panic bolts) to allow opening from the inside without the use of a key or tool.		N
12	Conductors and cables		-
12.1	General requirements		-
	voltage, current, protection against electric shock, grouping of cables) and external influences (for example ambient temperature presence of water or corrosive	Input cables and outer ground bonding conductors are supplied by user according to instructions	P
	These requirements do not apply to the integral wiring of assemblies, subassemblies, and devices that are manufactured and tested in accordance with their relevant IEC standard (for example IEC 61800 series).	IFC standards	P
12.2	Conductors		-
	Conductors should be of copper. Where aluminium conductors are used, the cross-sectional area shall be at least 16 mm2.		P
	cross-sectional area of conductors should not be less than as shown in Table 5. However, conductors with smaller cross-sectional areas or other constructions than shown in Table 5 may be used in equipment provided adequate mechanical strength is achieved by other means and proper functioning is not impaired.		
	Class 1 and class 2 conductors are primarily intended for use between rigid, non-moving parts where vibration is not considered to be likely to cause damage.	I I	P
	All conductors that are subject to frequent movement (for example one movement per hour of machine operation)	I I	P

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	should have flowible stoom lines of along 5 on along 6	
10.0	should have flexible stranding of class 5 or class 6.	
12.3	Insulation	-
	Where the insulation of conductors and cables can Meet the requirements constitute hazards due for example to the propagation of a fire or the emission of toxic or corrosive fumes, guidance from the cable supplier should be sought. It is important to give special attention to the integrity of a circuit having a safety-related function. The insulation of cables and conductors used, shall be suitable for a test voltage: — not less than 2 000 V AC for a duration of 5 min for 2000V, no breakdown operation at voltages higher than 50 V AC or 120 V DC,	- P
	or — not less than 500 V AC for a duration of 5 min for PELV circuits (see IEC 60364-4-41, class III equipment).	P
	The mechanical strength and thickness of the insulation Not be damaged during shall be such that the insulation cannot be damaged in cable laying or in operation or during laying, especially for cables pulled operation into ducts.	P
12.4	Current-carrying capacity in normal service	-
	The current-carrying capacity depends on several factors, Meet the requirements for example insulation material, number of conductors in a cable, design (sheath), methods of installation, grouping and ambient temperature.	P
	One typical example of the current-carrying capacities for Meet the requirements PVC insulated wiring between enclosures and individual items of equipment under steady-state conditions is given in Table 6.	P
12.5	Conductor and cable voltage drop	-
	The voltage drop from the point of supply to the load in Not exceed 5%. any power circuit cable shall not exceed 5 % of the nominal voltage under normal operating conditions. In order to conform to this requirement, it can be necessary to use conductors having a larger cross-sectional area than that derived from Table 6.	P
	In control circuits, the voltage drop shall not reduce the Meet the requirements voltage at any device below the manufacturer's	P

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	specification for that device, taking into account inrush		
	currents.		
	See also 4.3.		
	The voltage drop in components, for example overcurrent	Meet the requirements	P
	protective devices and switching devices, should be		
	considered.		
12.6	Flexible cables		-
12.6.1	General		-
	Flexible cables shall have Class 5 or Class 6 conductors.		P
	Cables that are subjected to severe duties shall be of		P
	adequate construction to protect against:		
	— abrasion due to mechanical handling and dragging		P
	across rough surfaces;		
	— kinking due to operation without guides;		P
	 stress resulting from guide rollers and forced guiding, 		P
	being wound and re-wound on cable drums.		
12.6.2	Mechanical rating		-
	The cable handling system of the machine shall be so	<15 N/mm ² of copper	P
	designed to keep the tensile sitess of the conductors as	cross section area	1
	low as is practicable during machine operations. Where		
	copper conductors are used, the tensile stress applied to		
	the conductors shall not exceed 15 N/mm2 of the copper		
	cross-sectional area. Where the demands of the		
	application exceed the tensile stress limit of 15 N/mm2,		
	cables with special construction features should be used		
	and the allowed maximal tensile stress should be agreed		
	with the cable manufacturer.	C1	N.T
	The maximum stress applied to the conductors of flexible	Copper usea.	N
	cables with material other than copper shall be within the		
12.6.2	cable manufacturer's specification.		
12.6.3	Current-carrying capacity of cables wound on drums		-
	Cables to be wound on drums shall be selected with	Not be wound on drums	N
	conductors having a cross-sectional area such that, when fully wound on the drum and carrying the normal service		
	load, the maximum allowable conductor temperature is		
	not exceeded.		
	For cables of circular cross-sectional area installed on		N
	drums, the maximum current-carrying capacity in free air		1 1
	should be derated in accordance with Table 7		
	should be defated in accordance with fault /		

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
12.7	Conductor wires, conductor bars and slip-ring assemblies		-
12.7.1	Basic protection		-
	Conductor wires, conductor bars and slip-ring assemblies	Meet the requirements	P
	shall be installed or enclosed in such a way that, during		
	normal access to the machine, basic protection is		
	achieved by the application of one of the following		
	protective measures:		
	— protection by partial insulation of live parts, or where		P
	this is not practicable;		
	— protection by enclosures or barriers of at least IP2X	IP2X	P
	or IPXXB.		
	Horizontal top surfaces of barriers or enclosures that are	IP4X	P
	readily accessible shall provide a degree of protection of		
	at least IP4X or IPXXD.		
	Where the required degree of protection is not achieved,		N
	protection by placing live parts out of reach in		
	combination with emergency switching off in accordance		
	with 9.2.3.4.3 shall be applied.		
	Conductor wires and conductor bars shall be so placed		-
	and/or protected as to:		
	 prevent contact, especially for unprotected conductor 	Meet the requirements	P
	wires and conductor bars, with conductive items such as		
	the cords of pull-cord switches, strain-relief devices and		
	drive chains;		
	— prevent damage from a swinging load. See also 6.2.6.		P
12.7.2	Protective conductors		-
	Where conductor wires, conductor bars and slip-ring	-	P
	assemblies are installed as part of the protective bonding		
	circuit, they shall not carry current in normal operation.		
	Therefore, the protective conductor (PE) and the neutral		
	conductor (N) shall each use a separate conductor wire,		
	conductor bar or slip-ring.		
	The continuity of protective conductors using sliding	•	N
	contacts shall be ensured by taking appropriate measures		
	(for example, duplication of the current collector,		
10 = -	continuity monitoring).		
12.7.3	Protective conductor current collectors		-
	Protective conductor current collectors shall have a shape		N
	or construction so that they are not interchangeable with		

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	the other current collectors. Such current collectors shall		
	be of the sliding contact type.		
12.7.4	Removable current collectors with a disconnector		-
	function		
	Removable current collectors having a disconnector	No such collector	N
	function shall be so designed that the protective		
	conductor circuit is interrupted only after the live		
	conductors have been disconnected, and the continuity of		
	the protective conductor circuit is re-established before		
	any live conductor is reconnected (see also 8.2.3).		
12.7.5	Clearances in air		-
	Clearances between the respective conductors, and	Meet the requirements	P
	between adjacent systems, of conductor wires, conductor		
	bars, slip-ring assemblies and their current collectors		
	shall be suitable for at least a rated impulse voltage of an		
	overvoltage category III in accordance with IEC 60664-1.		
12.7.6	Creepage distances		-
	Creepage distances between the respective conductors,	-	P
	between adjacent systems of conductor wires, conductor		
	bars and slip-ring assemblies, and their current collectors		
	shall be suitable for operation in the intended		
	environment, for example open air, inside buildings,		
	protected by enclosures.		
	In abnormally dusty, moist or corrosive environments, the		-
	following creepage distance requirements apply:		
	- unprotected conductor wires, conductor bars, and	-	P
	slip-ring assemblies shall be equipped with insulators		
	with a minimum creepage distance of 60 mm;		
	— enclosed conductor wires, insulated multipole	<u> </u>	P
	conductor bars and insulated individual conductor bars		
	shall have a minimum creepage distance of 30 mm.		
	The manufacturer's recommendations shall be followed		P
	regarding special measures to prevent a gradual reduction		
	in the insulation values due to unfavourable ambient		
	conditions (for example deposits of conductive dust,		
10.7.7	chemical attack).		
12.7.7	Conductor system sectioning	N 6	-
	Where conductor wires or conductor bars are arranged so	-	P
	that they can be divided into isolated sections, suitable		
	design measures shall be employed to prevent the		

File No.: TCF22041513MD P142/171

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	energization of adjacent sections by the current collectors		
	themselves.		
12.7.8	Construction and installation of conductor wire,		-
	conductor bar systems and slip-ring assemblies		
	Conductor wires, conductor bars and slip-ring assemblies	Meet the requirements	P
	in power circuits shall be grouped separately from those		
	in control circuits.		
	Conductor wires, conductor bars and slip-ring assemblies,	Meet the requirements	P
	including their current collectors, shall be capable of		
	withstanding, without damage, the mechanical forces and		
	thermal effects of short-circuit currents.		
	Removable covers for conductor wire and conductor bar		N
	systems laid underground or underfloor shall be so		
	designed that they cannot be opened by one person		
	without the aid of a tool.		
	Where conductor bars are installed in a common metal	Meet the requirements	P
	enclosure, the individual sections of the enclosure shall		
	be bonded together and connected to the protective		
	bonding circuit. Metal covers of conductor bars laid		
	underground or underfloor shall also be bonded together		
	and connected to the protective bonding circuit.		
	The protective bonding circuit shall include the covers or	Meet the requirements	P
	cover plates of metal enclosures or underfloor ducts.		
	Where metal hinges form a part of the protective bonding		
	circuit, their continuity shall be verified (see Clause 18).		
	Conductor bar ducts that can be subject to accumulation		P
	of liquid such as oil or water shall have drainage		
	facilities.		
13	Wiring practices		-
13.1	Connections and routing		-
13.1.1	General requirements		-
	All connections, especially those of the protective	Eined by gamayya	D
	bonding circuit, shall be secured against accidental	rixed by screws	P
	loosening		
	The means of connection shall be suitable for the	Eined by conserve	ח
	cross-sectional areas and nature of the conductors being	rixed by screws	P
	terminated.		
	The connection of two or more conductors to one	No terminal has been	P
	terminal is permitted only in those cases where the	connected with three or	

File No.: TCF22041513MD P143/171

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause		Result-Remark	Verdict
	terminal is designed for that purpose. However, only one		
	protective conductor shall be connected to one terminal		
	connecting point.		
	Soldered connections shall only be permitted where	No soldered connection	N
	terminals are provided that are suitable for soldering.	has been used.	

File No.: TCF22041513MD P144/171

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	Where it is necessary to connect and disconnect cables and cable assemblies, sufficient extra length shall be		P
	provided for that purpose.		
	The terminations of cables shall be adequately supported		P
	to prevent mechanical stresses at the terminations of the conductors.	measure has been taken.	
	Wherever practicable, the protective conductor shall be		P
	placed close to the associated live conductors in order to		
	decrease the impedance of the loop.		
13.1.3	Conductors of different circuits		-
	Conductors of different circuits may be laid side by side,	Conductor for different	P
	may occupy the same duct (for example conduit, cable	circuits laid side by side	1
	trunking system), or may be in the same multiconductor	or occurs the same duct	
	cable or in the same plug/socket combination provided		
	that the arrangement does not impair the proper		
	functioning of the respective circuits and:		
	 where those circuits operate at different voltages, the conductors are separated by suitable barriers or: 	Enough insulation	P
	conductors are separated by suitable barriers or;	provided	
	• the conductors are insulated for the highest voltage to	Europolo in colletion	Р
		Enough insulation	P
	example line to line voltage for unearthed systems and	provided	
	phase to earth voltage for earthed systems.		
13.1.4	AC circuits – Electromagnetic effects (prevention of eddy		-
	currents)		
	Conductors of AC circuits installed in ferromagnetic	Meet the requirements	P
	enclosures shall be arranged so that all conductors of each		
	circuit, including the protective conductor of each circuit,		
	are contained in the same enclosure. Where such		
	conductors enter a ferrous enclosure, they shall be		
	arranged such that the conductors are not individually		
	surrounded by ferromagnetic material.		
	Single-core cables armoured with steel wire or steel tape		P
	should not be used for AC circuits.		
13.1.5	Connection between pick-up and pick-up converter of an	No such system	-
	inductive power supply system		
	The cable between the pick-up and the pick-up converter		N
	shall be:		
	— as short as practicable;		N
	 adequately protected against mechanical damage. 		N

P146/171

	EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict	
13.2	Identification of conductors		-	
13.2.1	General requirements		-	
	Each conductor shall be identifiable at each termination in accordance with the technical documentation.	Identification at each termination	P	
	It is recommended (for example to facilitate maintenance) that conductors be identified by number, alphanumeric, colour (either solid or with one or more stripes), or a combination of colour and numbers or alphanumeric. When numbers are used, they shall be Arabic; letters shall be Roman (either upper or lower case).	colour and numbers or alphanumeric. Arabic and Roman		
13.2.2	Identification of the protective conductor / protective bonding conductor		-	
	The protective conductor / protective bonding conductor shall be readily distinguishable from other conductors by shape, location, marking, or colour. When identification is by colour alone, the bicolour combination GREEN-AND-YELLOW shall be used throughout the length of the conductor. This colour identification is strictly reserved for protective conductors/protective bonding conductors.	GREEN-AND-YELLO W.	P	
	For insulated conductors, the bicolour combination GREEN-AND-YELLOW shall be such that on any 15 mm length, one of the colours covers at least 30 % and not more than 70 % of the surface of the conductor, the other colour covering the remainder of the surface.	GREEN-AND-YELLO W.	P	
	Where the protective conductor(s) can be easily identified by its shape, position, or construction (for example a braided conductor, uninsulated stranded conductor), or where the insulated conductor is not readily accessible or is part of a multicore cable, colour coding throughout its length is not necessary. However, where the conductor is not clearly visible throughout its length, the ends or accessible locations shall be clearly identified by the graphical symbol IEC 60417-5019:2006-08 (see Figure 16) or with the letters PE or by the bicolour combination GREEN-AND-YELLOW.		P	
	Exception: Protective bonding conductors may be marked with the letters PB and/or the symbol IEC 60417-5021 (2002-10) (see Figure 17).		N	

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
13.2.3	Identification of the neutral conductor		-
	Where a circuit includes a neutral conductor that is		P
	identified by colour alone, the colour used for this		
	conductor shall be BLUE. In order to avoid confusion		
	with other colours, it is recommended that an unsaturated		
	blue be used, called here "light blue" (see 6.2.2 of IEC		
	60445:2010). Where the selected colour is the sole		
	identification of the neutral conductor, that colour shall		
	not be used for identifying any other conductor where		
	confusion is possible.		
	Where identification by colour is used, bare conductors		P
	used as neutral conductors shall be either coloured by a		
	stripe, 15 mm to 100 mm wide in each compartment or		
	unit and at each accessible location, or coloured		
	throughout their length.		
13.2.4	Identification by colour		-
	Where colour-coding is used for identification of		-
	conductors (other than the protective conductor (see		
	13.2.2) and the neutral conductor (see 13.2.3)), the		
	following colours may be used:		
	BLACK, BROWN, RED, ORANGE, YELLOW,		P
	GREEN, BLUE (including LIGHT BLUE), VIOLET,		
	GREY, WHITE, PINK, TURQUOISE.		
	It is recommended that, where colour is used for		P
	identification, the colour be used throughout the length of		
	the conductor either by the colour of the insulation or by		
	colour markers at regular intervals and at the ends or		
	accessible location.		
	For safety reasons, the colour GREEN or the colour	_	P
	YELLOW should not be used where there is a possibility	·	
	of confusion with the bicolour combination		
	GREEN-AND-YELLOW (see 13.2.2).		
	Colour identification using combinations of those colours		P
	listed above may be used provided there can be no		
	confusion and that GREEN or YELLOW is not used		
	except in the bicolour combination		
	GREEN-AND-YELLOW.		
	Where colour-coding is used for identification of		-
	conductors, it is recommended that they be colour-coded		
	as follows:		

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	BLACK: AC and DC power circuits;		P
	— RED: AC control circuits;		P
	BLUE: DC control circuits;		P
	— ORANGE: excepted circuits in accordance with		P
	5.3.5.		
	Exceptions to the above are permitted where insulation is		N
	not available in the colours recommended (for example in		
	multiconductor cables).		
13.3	Wiring inside enclosures		-
	Conductors inside enclosures shall be supported where	TO: 11	T.
	necessary to keep them in place. Non-metallic ducts shall	Fixed by screws	P
	be permitted only when they are made with a		
	flame-retardant insulating material (see the IEC 60332		
	series).		
	It is recommended that electrical equipment mounted		Р
	inside enclosures be designed and constructed in such a		
	way as to permit modification of the wiring from the		
	front of the enclosure (see also 11.2.1). Where that is not		
	practicable and control devices are connected from the		
	rear of the enclosure, access doors or swingout panels		
	shall be provided.		
	Connections to devices mounted on doors or to other	Meet the requirements	P
	movable parts shall be made using flexible conductors in	•	1
	accordance with 12.2 and 12.6 to allow for the frequent		
	<u> </u>		
	movement of the part. The conductors shall be anchored		
	to the fixed part and to the movable part independently of		
	the electrical connection (see also 8.2.3 and 11.2.1).		D
	Conductors and cables that do not run in ducts shall be		P
	adequately supported.		-
	Terminal blocks or plug/socket combinations shall be		P
	used for control wiring that extends beyond the enclosure.		
	For plug/socket combinations, see also 13.4.5 and 13.4.6.		
	Power cables and cables of measuring circuits may be	_	P
	directly connected to the terminals of the devices for		
	which the connections were intended.		
13.4	Wiring outside enclosures		-
13.4.1	General requirements		_
	The means of introduction of cables or ducts with their	The protection degree	P

P148/171

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	individual glands, bushings, etc., into an enclosure shall	can be secured.	
	ensure that the degree of protection is not reduced (see		
	11.3).		
	Conductors of a circuit shall not be distributed over		P
	different multi-core cables, conduits, cable ducting		
	systems or cable trunking systems. This is not required		
	where a number of multi-core cables, forming one circuit,		
	are installed in parallel. Where multi-core cables are	I .	
	installed in parallel, each cable shall contain one		
12.42	conductor of each phase and the neutral if any.		
13.4.2	External ducts	TT 1.1 1 1 1	- D
	Conductors and their connections external to the		P
	electrical equipment enclosure(s) shall be enclosed in	_ ,	
	suitable ducts (i.e. conduit or cable trunking systems) as		
	described in 13.5 except for suitably protected cables that		
	may be installed without ducts and with or without the		
	use of cable trays or cable support means. Where devices such as position switches or proximity switches are		
	supplied with a dedicated cable, their cable need not be		
	enclosed in a duct when the cable is suitable for the		
	purpose, sufficiently short, and so located or protected,		
	that the risk of damage is minimized.		
	Fittings used with ducts or cables shall be suitable for the	Plastic cable ties used	P
	physical environment.		_
	Flexible conduit or flexible multiconductor cable shall be	Flexible conduit Used.	P
	used where it is necessary to employ flexible connections		
	to pendant push-button stations. The weight of the		
	pendant stations shall be supported by means other than		
	the flexible conduit or the flexible multiconductor cable,		
	except where the conduit or cable is specifically designed		
	for that purpose.		
13.4.3	Connection to moving elements of the machine		-
	The design of connections to moving parts shall take into	Flexible cable and	P
	account the foreseeable frequency of movement and shall	flexible conduit used.	
	be made using conductors in accordance with 12.2 and		
	12.6. Flexible cable and flexible conduit shall be so		
	installed as to avoid excessive flexing and straining,		
	particularly at the fittings.		
	Cables subject to movement shall be supported in such a	_	P
	way that there is no mechanical strain on the connection		

File No.: TCF22041513MD P149/171

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	points nor any sharp flexing. When this is achieved by the provision of a loop, it shall have sufficient length to provide for a bending radius of the cable as specified by the cable manufacturer or if no such specification is given, at least 10 times the diameter of the cable. Flexible cables of machines shall be so installed or		
	protected as to minimize the possibility of external damage due to factors that include the following cable use or potential abuse:		
	— being run over by the machine itself;		P
	 being run over by vehicles or other machines; 		N
	 coming into contact with the machine structure during movements; 		P
	 running in and out of cable baskets, or on or off cable drums; 		P
	 acceleration forces and wind forces on festoon systems or suspended cables; 		P
	 excessive rubbing by cable collector; 		N
	— exposure to excessive radiated heat.		N
	The cable sheath shall be resistant to the normal wear that can be expected from movement and to the effects of environmental contaminants (for example oil, water, coolants, dust).		P
	Where cables subject to movement are close to moving parts, precautions shall be taken to maintain a space of at least 25 mm between the moving parts and the cables. Where that distance is not practicable, fixed barriers shall be provided between the cables and the moving parts.	-	P
	The cable handling system shall be so designed that lateral cable angles do not exceed 5°, avoiding torsion in the cable when:		P
	 being wound on and off cable drums; and 		N
	 approaching and leaving cable guidance devices. 		P
	Measures shall be taken to ensure that at least two turns of flexible cables always remain on a drum.	No drum.	N
	Devices serving to guide and carry a flexible cable shall be so designed that the inner bending radius at all points where the cable is bent is not less than the values given in Table 8, unless otherwise agreed with the cable manufacturer, taking into account the permissible tension	-	P

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	and the expected fatigue life.		
	The straight section between two bends shall be at least	Meet the requirements.	P
	20 times the diameter of the cable.		
	Where flexible conduit is adjacent to moving parts, the	Meet the requirements.	P
	construction and supporting means shall prevent damage		
	to the flexible conduit under all conditions of operation.		
	Flexible conduit shall not be used for connections subject	Meet the requirements.	P
	to rapid or frequent movements except when specifically		
	designed for that purpose.		
13.4.4	Interconnection of devices on the machine		P
	Where several machine-mounted devices (for example	Meet the requirements.	P
	position sensors, push-buttons) are connected in series or	_	
	in parallel, it is recommended that the connections		
	between those devices be made through terminals		
	forming intermediate test points. Such terminals shall be		
	conveniently placed, adequately protected, and shown on		
	the relevant diagrams.		
13.4.5		No plug/socket	-
	8	combination.	
	Components or devices inside an enclosure, terminated		N
	by fixed plug/socket combinations (no flexible cable), or		
	components connected to a bus system by a plug/socket		
	combination, are not considered to be plug/socket		
	combinations for the purpose of this 13.4.5.		
	After installation in accordance with item a) below,		N
	plug/socket combinations shall be of such a type as to		1,
	prevent unintentional contact with live parts at any time,		
	including during insertion or removal of the connectors.		
	The degree of protection shall be at least IP2X or IPXXB.		
	PELV circuits are excepted from this requirement.		
	Where the plug/socket contains a contact for the		N
	protective bonding circuit, it shall have a first make last		11
	break contact (see also 8.2.4).		
	Plug/socket combinations intended to be connected or		N
	disconnected during load conditions shall have sufficient		1.4
	load-breaking capacity. Where the plug/socket		
	combination is rated at 30 A, or greater, it shall be		
	interlocked with a switching device so that the connection		
	_		
	and disconnection is possible only when the switching device is in the OFF position.		
	device is in the Off position.		

File No.: TCF22041513MD P151/171

	EN 60204-1:2018	
Clause	Requirement-Test Result-Remark	Verdict
	Plug/socket combinations that are rated at more than 16 A shall have a retaining means to prevent unintended or accidental disconnection.	N
	Where an unintended or accidental disconnection of plug/socket combinations can cause a hazardous situation, they shall have a retaining means.	N
	The installation of plug/socket combinations shall fulfil the following requirements as applicable:	N
	a) The component which remains live after disconnection shall have a degree of protection of at least IP2X or IPXXB, taking into account the required clearance and creepage distances. PELV circuits are excepted from this requirement.	N
	b) Metallic housings of plug/socket combinations shall be connected to the protective bonding circuit.	N
	c) Plug/socket combinations intended to carry power loads but not to be disconnected during load conditions shall have a retaining means to prevent unintended or accidental disconnection and shall be clearly marked that they are not intended to be disconnected under load.	N
	d) Where more than one plug/socket combination is provided in the same electrical equipment, the associated combinations shall be clearly identifiable. It is recommended that mechanical coding be used to prevent incorrect insertion.	N
	e) Plug/socket combinations used in control circuits shall fulfil the applicable requirements of IEC 61984.	N
	Exception: In plug/socket combinations in accordance with IEC 60309-1, only those contacts shall be used for control circuits which are intended for those purposes. This exception does not apply to control circuits using high frequency signals superimposed on the power circuits.	N
13.4.6	Dismantling for shipment	-
	Where it is necessary that wiring be disconnected for Internal wiring is shipment, terminals or plug/socket combinations shall be located fully for provided at the sectional points. Such terminals shall be shipment, and input suitably enclosed and plug/socket combinations shall be terminal for power protected from the physical environment during transportation and storage.	P

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
13.4.7	Additional conductors		-
	Consideration should be given to providing additional	Providing additional	P
	conductors for maintenance or repair. When spare	conductors for	
	conductors are provided, they shall be connected to spare	maintenance and repair.	
	terminals or isolated in such a manner as to prevent		
	contact with live parts.		
13.5	Ducts, connection boxes and other boxes		-
13.5.1	General requirements		-
	Ducts shall provide a degree of protection (see IEC	IP54	P
	60529) suitable for the application.		
	All sharp edges, flash, burrs, rough surfaces, or threads	Edges smooth	P
	with which the insulation of the conductors can come in	Luges smooth	1
	contact shall be removed from ducts and fittings. Where		
	necessary, additional protection consisting of a	,	
	flame-retardant, oil-resistant insulating material shall be		
	provided to protect conductor insulation.		
	Drain holes of 6 mm diameter are permitted in cable		P
	trunking systems, connection boxes, and other boxes used		1
	for wiring purposes that can be subject to accumulations		
	of oil or moisture.		
	In order to prevent confusion of conduits with oil, air, or		P
	water piping, it is recommended that the conduits be		
	either physically separated or suitably identified.		
	Ducts and cable trays shall be rigidly supported and		P
	positioned at a sufficient distance from moving parts and		
	in such a manner so as to minimize the possibility of		
	damage or wear. In areas where human passage is		
	required, the ducts and cable trays shall be mounted at		
	least 2 m above the working surface.		
	Cable trays that are partially covered should not be	_	P
	considered to be ducts or cable trunking systems (see		
	13.5.6), and the cables used shall be of a type suitable for		
	installation on open cable trays.		
	It is recommended that the dimensions and arrangement	<u>-</u>	P
	of ducts be such as to facilitate the insertion of the		
	conductors and cables.		
13.5.2	Rigid metal conduit and fittings		-
	Rigid metal conduit and fittings shall be of galvanized		N
	steel or of a corrosion-resistant material suitable for the		

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	conditions. The use of dissimilar metals in contact that		
	can cause galvanic action should be avoided.		
	Conduits shall be securely held in place and supported at		N
	each end.		
	Fittings shall be compatible with the conduit and		N
	appropriate for the application. Fittings should be		
	threaded unless structural difficulties prevent assembly.		
	Where threadless fittings are used, the conduit shall be		
	securely fastened to the equipment.		
	Conduit bends shall be made in such a manner that the		N
	conduit shall not be damaged and the internal diameter of		
	the conduit shall not be effectively reduced.		
13.5.3	Flexible metal conduit and fittings		-
	A flexible metal conduit shall consist of a flexible metal	Not used flexible	N
	tuding of woven wire armour. It shall be sultable for the	metallic conduits	
	expected physical environment.		
	Fittings shall be compatible with the conduit and	Not used flexible	N
	andronfiale for the addition	metallic conduits	
13.5.4	Flexible non-metallic conduit and fittings		-
	Flexible non-metallic conduit shall be resistant to kinking	Meet the requirements	P
	and shall have physical characteristics similar to those of		
	the sheath of multiconductor cables.		
	The conduit shall be suitable for use in the expected	Fived by metal loop on	P
	physical environment. Fittings shall be compatible with	machine	1
	the conduit and appropriate for the application.	macmic	
13.5.5	Cable trunking systems		-
	Cable trunking systems external to enclosures shall be		N
	rigidly supported and clear of all moving parts of the		
	machine and of sources of contamination.		
	Covers shall be shaped to overlap the sides; gaskets shall		N
	be permitted. Covers shall be attached to cable trunking		
	systems by suitable means. On horizontal cable trunking		
	systems, the cover shall not be on the bottom unless		
	specifically designed for such installation.		
	Where the cable trunking system is furnished in sections,		N
	the joints between sections shall fit tightly but need not		
	be gasketed.		_
	The only openings permitted shall be those required for		P
	wiring or for drainage. Cable trunking systems shall not		

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	have opened but unused knockouts.	
13.5.6	Machine compartments and cable trunking systems	-
	The use of compartments or cable trunking systems	N
	within the column or base of a machine to enclose	
	conductors is permitted provided the compartments or	
	cable trunking systems are isolated from coolant or oil	
	reservoirs and are entirely enclosed. Conductors run in	
	enclosed compartments and cable trunking systems shall	
	be so secured and arranged that they are not subject to	
	damage.	
13.5.7	Connection boxes and other boxes	_
	Connection boxes and other boxes used for wiring rurnoses shall be accessible for maintenance. Those	D
	purposes shall be accessible for maintenance. Those Readily accessible for	P
	boxes shall provide protection against the ingress of solid	
	bodies and liquids, taking into account the external IP54	
	influences under which the machine is intended to	
	operate (see 11.3).	
	Those boxes shall not have opened but unused knockouts	P
	nor any other openings and shall be so constructed as to	
	exclude materials such as dust, flyings, oil, and coolant.	
13.5.8	Motor connection boxes	_
	Motor connection boxes shall enclose only connections to	P
	the motor and motor-mounted devices (for example	
	brakes, temperature sensors, plugging switches,	
	tachometer generators).	
14	Electric motors and associated equipment	_
14.1	General requirements	_
	Electric motors should conform to the relevant parts of	P
	IEC 60034 series.	
	The protection requirements for motors and associated	P
	equipment are given in 7.2 for overcurrent protection, in	
	7.3 for protection of motors against overheating, and in	
	7.6 for overspeed protection.	
	As many controllers do not switch off the supply to a	P
	motor when it is at rest, care shall be taken to ensure	1
	compliance with the requirements of 5.3, 5.4, 5.5, 7.5, 7.6	
	and 9.4. Motor control equipment shall be located and	
	and 7.1. Motor control equipment shall be recated and	1
	mounted in accordance with Clause 11.	

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	Enclosures for motors should be in accordance with IEC 60034-5.	P
	The degree of protection shall be dependent on the application and the physical environment (see 4.4). All motors shall be adequately protected from mechanical damage.	P
14.3	Motor dimensions	-
	As far as is practicable, the dimensions of motors shall conform to those given in the IEC 60072 series.	P
14.4	Motor mounting and compartments	-
	Each motor and its associated couplings, belts, pulleys, or chains, shall be so mounted that they are adequately protected and are easily accessible for inspection, maintenance, adjustment and alignment, lubrication, and replacement. The motor mounting arrangement shall be such that all motor mounting means can be removed and all terminal boxes are accessible.	P
	Motors shall be so mounted that proper cooling is ensured and the temperature rise remains within the limits of the insulation class (see IEC 60034-1).	P
	Where practicable, motor compartments should be clean and dry, and when required, shall be ventilated directly to the exterior of the machine. The vents shall be such that ingress of swarf, dust, or water spray is at an acceptable level.	P
	There shall be no opening between the motor compartment and any other compartment that does not meet the motor compartment requirements. Where a conduit or pipe is run into the motor compartment from another compartment not meeting the motor compartment requirements, any clearance around the conduit or pipe shall be sealed.	P
14.5	Criteria for motor selection	-
	The characteristics of motors and associated equipment shall be selected in accordance with the anticipated service and physical environmental conditions (see 4.4).	P

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	In this respect, the points that shall be considered include:		
	— type of motor;		P
	— type of duty cycle (see IEC 60034-1);		P
	— fixed speed or variable speed operation, (and the		P
	consequent variable influence of the ventilation);		
	— mechanical vibration;		P
	— type of motor control;		P
	— temperature rise and other effects of the frequency		P
	spectrum of the voltage and/or current feeding the motor		
	(particularly when it is supplied from a converter);		
	— method of starting and the possible influence of the		P
	inrush current on the operation of other users of the same		
	power supply, taking also into account possible special		
	considerations stipulated by the supply authority;		
	— variation of counter-torque load with time and speed;		P
	— influence of loads with large inertia;		P
	— influence of constant torque or constant power		P
	operation;		
	 possible need of inductive reactors between motor 		P
	and converter.		
14.6	Protective devices for mechanical brakes		-
	Operation of the overload and overcurrent protective		P
	devices for mechanical brake actuators shall initiate the		
	simultaneous de-energization (release) of the associated		
	machine actuators.		
15	Socket-outlets and lighting		-
15.1		No socket-outlets.	-
	Where the machine or its associated equipment is		N
	provided with socket-outlets that are intended to be used		
	for accessory equipment (for example hand-held power		
	tools, test equipment), the following apply:		
	— the socket-outlets should conform to IEC 60309-1.		N
	Where that is not practicable, they should be clearly		
	marked with the voltage and current ratings;		
	— the continuity of the protective bonding circuit to the		N
	socket-outlet shall be ensured;		'
<u> </u>			

File No.: TCF22041513MD P157/171

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	socket-outlet shall be protected against overcurrent and,		
	when required, against overload in accordance with 7.2		
	and 7.3 separately from the protection of other circuits;		
	— where the power supply to the socket-outlet is not		N
	disconnected by the supply discon- necting device for the		
	machine or the section of the machine, the requirements		
	of 5.3.5 apply;		
	— where fault protection is provided by automatic		N
	disconnection of supply, the disconnection time shall be		
	in accordance with Table A.1 for TN systems or Table A.2		
	for TT systems;		
	circuits supplying socket-outlets with a current rating		N
	not exceeding 20 A shall be provided with residual		
	current protection (RCDs) with a rated operating current		
1.5.0	not exceeding 30 mA.		
15.2	Local lighting of the machine and of the equipment		-
15.2.1	General		_
	The ON/OFF switch shall not be incorporated in the		N
	lampholder or in the flexible connecting cord.		
	Stroboscopic effects from lights shall be avoided by the		N
	selection of appropriate luminaires.		
	Where fixed lighting is provided in an enclosure,		N
	electromagnetic compatibility should be taken into		
	account using the principles outlined in 4.4.2.		
15.2.2	Supply		-
	The nominal voltage of the local lighting circuit shall not		N
	exceed 250 V between conductors. A voltage not		
	exceeding 50 V between conductors is recommended.		
	Lighting circuits shall be supplied from one of the		N
	following sources (see also 7.2.6):		
	— a dedicated isolating transformer connected to the		N
	load side of the supply disconnecting device. Overcurrent		
	protection shall be provided in the secondary circuit;		
	— a dedicated isolating transformer connected to the		N
	line side of the supply disconnecting device. That source		
	shall be permitted for maintenance lighting circuits in		
	control enclosures only. Overcurrent protection shall be		
	provided in the secondary circuit (see also 5.3.5);		
	— a circuit of the electrical equipment of the machine		N

EN 60204-1:2018				
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict	

0.2	Warning signs	-
6.2	Warning signs, nameplates, markings, labels and identification plates shall be of sufficient durability to withstand the physical environment involved. Warning signs	P
6.1	General	-
6	Marking, warning signs and reference designations	-
	Exception: where fixed lighting is out of reach of operators during normal operation, the provisions of 15.2.4 do not apply.	N
	Reflectors shall be supported by a bracket and not by the lampholder.	N
	— constructed with an insulating material protecting the lamp cap so as to prevent unintentional contact.	N
	— in accordance with the relevant IEC standard;	N
	physical environment. The lampholders shall be:	_
	Adjustable lighting fittings shall be suitable for the	N
5.2.4	Local lighting circuits shall be protected in accordance with 7.2.6. Fittings	N -
5.2.3	Protection	-
	Exception: where fixed lighting is out of reach of operators during normal operations, the provisions of 15.2.2 do not apply.	N
	— power supply units, for DC supply to LED light sources, fitted with isolating transformers (for example, in accordance with IEC 61558-2-6).	N
	— an externally supplied lighting circuit (for example factory lighting supply). This shall be permitted in control enclosures only, and for the machine work light(s) where their total power rating is not more than 3 kW;	N
	— an isolating transformer connected to the line side of the supply disconnecting device, provided with a dedicated primary disconnecting means (see 5.3.5) and secondary overcurrent protection, and mounted within the control enclosure adjacent to the supply disconnecting device;	N
	for lighting, with dedicated overcurrent protection;	

EN 60204-1:2018			
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
16.2.1	Electric shock hazard		_
	Enclosures that do not otherwise clearly show that they	X	P
	contain electrical equipment that can give rise to a risk of	Marked / V	
	electric shock shall be marked with the graphical symbol		
	ISO 7010-W012 (see Figure 18).		
	The warning sign shall be plainly visible on the enclosure	It is plainly visible on	P
	door or cover. The warning sign may be omitted (see also	the enclosure door.	
	6.2.2 b)) for:		
	— an enclosure equipped with a supply disconnecting		P
	device;		
	— an operator-machine interface or control station;		P
	— a single device with its own enclosure (for example		N
	position sensor).		
16.2.2	Hot surfaces hazard		-
	Where the risk assessment shows the need to warn		Р
	against the possibility of hazardous surface temperatures		Р
	of the electrical equipment, the graphical symbol ISO		
	7010-W017 shall be used (see Figure 19).		
16.3	Functional identification		-
	Control devices and visual indicators shall be clearly and	Marking clear and	P
	durably marked with regard to their functions either on or	durable	
	adjacent to the item. It is recommended that such		
	markings are made in accordance with IEC 60417 and ISO 7000.		
16.4			
10.4	Marking of enclosures of electrical equipment		-
	The following information shall be legibly and durably	They have been marked	P
	marked in a way that is plainly visible after the		•
	equipment is installed on enclosures that receive		
	incoming power supplies:		
		See the nameplate	P
	 certification mark or other marking that can be 	1	P
	required by local or regional legislation, when required;	and manneplace	1
	type designation or model, where applicable;		P
	• serial number where applicable;	See the nameplate	P
	 main document number (see IEC 62023) where 	•	P
	applicable;	and manneplace	1
	 rated voltage, number of phases and frequency (if 		P
	AC), and full-load current for each incoming supply.		1
	110), who fall four culting from the supply.		

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
	It is recommended that this information is provided	See the nameplate	P
	adjacent to the main incoming supply(ies).		
16.5	Reference designations		-
	All enclosures, assemblies, control devices, and	See circuit diagram	P
	1		
	reference designation as shown in the technical		
1.5	documentation.		
17	Technical documentation		-
17.1	General		-
	The information necessary for identification, transport,	All the information	P
	installation, use, maintenance, decommissioning and	l .	
	disposal of the electrical equipment shall be supplied.	many forms in the	
		instruction.	
	Annex I should be considered as guidance for the		P
	preparation of information and documents.		
17.2	Information related to the electrical equipment		-
	The following shall be supplied:		-
	a) where more than one document is provided, a main		P
	document for the electrical equipment as a whole, listing		
	the complementary documents associated with the		
	electrical equipment;		_
		See the nameplate	P
	c) information on installation and mounting including:		-
	a description of the electrical equipment's installation and mounting and its compaction to the electrical symplica	See instruction	P
	and mounting, and its connection to the electrical supplies		
	and where relevant other supplies;		
	short-circuit current rating of the electrical equipment for each incoming power supply:	See instruction	P
	for each incoming power supply;		
	• rated voltage, number of phases and frequency (if AC.), type of distribution system (TT, TN, IT) and	See instruction	P
	full-load current for each incoming supply;		
	any additional electrical supply(ies) requirements (for example maximum supply source immediates)		
	(for example maximum supply source impedance,	See instruction	P
	leakage current) for each incoming supply;		
	 space required for the removal or servicing of the 		
	electrical equipment;	See instruction	P
	orocarour equipment,		

EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict
• installation requirements where needed to ensure the the arrangements for cooling are not impaired;		P
environmental limitations (for example lightin vibration, EMC environment, atmospheric contaminant where appropriate;	(S)	P
• functional limitations (for example peak starting currents and permitted voltage drop(s)) as applicable;		P
precautions to be taken for the installation of the electrical equipment relevant to the electromagnet compatibility;	IC .	P
d) an instruction for the connection of simultaneous accessible extraneous-conductive- parts in the vicinity the machine (for example, within 2,5 metres) such as the following to the protective bonding circuit:	01	P
metallic pipes;		P
• fences;		P
• ladders;		P
handrails.		P
e) information on the functioning and operation including as applicable:		-
an overview of the structure of the electric equipment (for example by structure diagram or overvied diagram);	al See instruction	P
 procedures for programming or configuring, necessary for the intended use; 	See instruction	P
• procedures for restarting after an unexpected stop;	See instruction	P
a sequence of operation;	See instruction	P
f) information on maintenance of the electric equipment, as appropriate, including:	al	-
frequency and method of functional testing;	See instruction	P
• instructions on the procedures for safe maintenant and where it is necessary to suspend a safety function and/or protective measure (see 9.3.6);	Nee instruction	P
• guidance on the adjustment, repair, and frequence and method of preventive maintenance;	See instruction	P
details of the interconnections of the electric components subject to replacement (for example lectric circuit diagrams and/or connection tables);	See instruction	P

EN 60204-1:2018					
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict		
	• information on required special devices or tools;	See instruction	P		
	• information on spare parts;	See instruction	P		
	whether any particular training is required and specification of any necessary personal protective equipment:	See instruction	P		
	 where applicable, instructions to restrict availability of key(s) or tool(s) to skilled or instructed persons only; 		P		
	 settings (DIP-switches, programmable parameter values, etc); 	See instruction	P		
	 information for validation of safety related control functions after repair or modification, and for periodic testing where necessary; 	ISEE INSTRUCTION	P		
	g) information on handling, transportation and storage as appropriate (for example dimensions, weight, environmental conditions, possible ageing constraints);		-		
	h) information for proper disassembly and handling of components (for example for recycling or disposal).	See instruction	P		
18	Verification		-		
18.1	General		-		
	The extent of verification will be given in the dedicated product standard for a particular machine. Where there is no dedicated product standard for the machine, the verifications shall always include the items a), b), c) and h) and may include one or more of the items d) to g):		-		
	a) verification that the electrical equipment complies with its technical documentation;		P		
	b) verification of continuity of the protective bonding circuit (Test 1 of 18.2.2);		P		
	c) in case of fault protection by automatic disconnection of supply, conditions for protection by automatic disconnection shall be verified according to 18.2;		P		
	d) insulation resistance test (see 18.3);		P		
	e) voltage test (see 18.4);		P		
	f) protection against residual voltage (see 18.5);		P		
	g) verification that the relevant requirements of 8.2.6 are met;		Р		
	h) functional tests (see 18.6).		P		
2:1- N TO	F220/1513MD	P163	/171		

EN 60204-1:2018					
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict		
	When these tests are performed, it is recommended that		P		
	they follow the sequence listed above.				
	When the electrical equipment is modified, the		N		
	requirements stated in 18.7 shall apply.				
	For verifications that include measurement, measuring		P		
	equipment in accordance with the IEC 61557 series is				
	recommended.				
	The results of the verification shall be documented.		P		
18.2	Verification of conditions for protection by automatic		-		
	disconnection of supply				
18.2.1	General		-		
	The conditions for automatic disconnection of supply (see		P		
	6.3.3) shall be verified by tests. Test 1 verifies the				
	continuity of the protective bonding circuit.				
	Test 2 verifies the conditions for protection by automatic		P		
	disconnection of the supply in TN systems.				
	For TN-systems, those test methods are described in	Not TN-system	N		
	18.2.2 and 18.2.3; their application for different				
	conditions of supply are specified in 18.2.4.				
	For TT systems, see Clause A.2. For IT systems, see IEC		N		
	60364-6.				
	Where RCDs are used in the electrical equipment, their		N		
	function shall be verified in accordance with the				
	manufacturer's instructions. The test procedure and test				
	interval shall be specified in the maintenance instructions.				
18.2.2	Test 1 – Verification of the continuity of the protective		-		
	bonding circuit		_		
	The resistance between the PE terminal (see 5.2 and	` 11	P		
	Figure 4) and relevant points that are part of the	· ·			
	protective bonding circuit shall be measured with a				
	current between at least 0,2 A and approximately 10 A				
	derived from an electrically separated supply source (for				
	example SELV, see 414 of IEC 60364-4-41:2005) having				
	a maximum no-load voltage of 24 V AC or DC.		n		
	The resistance measured shall be in the expected range		P		
	according to the length, the cross sectional area and the				
	material of the related protective conductors and				
	protective bonding conductor(s).		D		
	Earthed PELV supplies can produce misleading results in this test and therefore shall not be used.		P		
	uns test and therefore shall not be used.				

	EN 60204-1:2018				
Clause	Requirement-Test Result-Remark	Verdict			
		ı			
	Test 2 – Fault loop impedance verification and suitability	N			
	of the associated overcurrent protective device				
l	The connections of each power supply including the	N			
	connection of the associated protective conductor to the				
l	PE terminal of the machine, shall be verified by				
	inspection.				
	The conditions for the protection by automatic	-			
	disconnection of supply in accordance with				
	6.3.3 and Annex A shall be verified by both:	N			
	a) verification of the fault loop impedance by:	N			
	— calculation, or	N			
	— measurement in accordance with A.1.4, and	N			
	b) confirmation that the setting and characteristics of	N			
	the associated overcurrent protective device are in				
	accordance with the requirements of Annex A, and where				
	a power drive system (PDS) is used, confirmation that the				
	setting and characteristics of the protective device(s)				
	associated with a PDS are in accordance with the				
	converter manufacturer's and protective device				
	manufacturer's instructions.				
18.2.4	Application of the test methods for TN-systems	-			
	When Test 2 of 18.2.3 is carried out by measurement, it	P			
	shall always be preceded by Test 1 of 18.2.2.				
	The tests that are necessary for machines of different	P			
	status are specified in Table 9.				
	Insulation resistance tests	-			
	When insulation resistance tests are performed, the (See appended table	P			
	insulation resistance measured at 500 V DC between the 18.3)				
	power circuit conductors and the protective bonding 500V DC				
l	circuit shall be not less than 1 M . The test may be				
	made on individual sections of the complete electrical				
	installation.				
	Exception: for certain parts of electrical equipment,	P			
	incorporating for example busbars, conductor wire or				
	conductor bar systems or slip-ring assemblies, a lower				
	minimum value is permitted, but that value shall not be				
l	less than 50 k .				
	If the electrical equipment of the machine contains surge	N			
	protection devices which are likely to operate during the	'`			

	EN 60204-1:2018		
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict

	The state of the s				
	test, it is permitted to either:				> T
	— disconnect these devices, or				N
	— reduce the test voltage to a value lower than the				N
	voltage protection level of the surge protection devices,				
	but not lower than the peak value of the upper limit of the				
	supply (phase to neutral) voltage.				
18.4	Voltage tests				-
	When voltage tests are performed, test equipment in				P
	accordance with IEC 61180—2 should be used.				
	The test voltage shall be at a nominal frequency of 50 Hz	50HZ			P
	or 60 Hz.				
	The maximum test voltage shall have a value of twice the	(See	appended	table	P
	rated supply voltage of the equipment or 1 000 V,	1 *	иррепаса	table	•
	whichever is the greater. The maximum test voltage shall	1 1	,		
	be applied between the power circuit conductors and the				
	protective bonding circuit for at least 1 s. The				
	requirements are satisfied if no disruptive discharge				
	occurs.				
	Components and devices that are not rated to withstand				P
	the test voltage and surge protection devices which are				
	likely to operate during the test shall be disconnected				
	during testing.				
	Components and devices that have been voltage tested in				P
	accordance with their product standards may be				
	disconnected during testing.				
18.5	Protection against residual voltages				-
	Where appropriate, tests shall be performed to ensure	(See	appended	table	P
	compliance with 6.2.4.	18.5)	11		
18.6	Functional tests				
10.0					
	The functions of electrical equipment shall be tested.	(See	appended	table	P
	The functions of electrical equipment shall be tested.	18.6)	appended	table	1
10 7	Datastina	10.0)			
18.7	Retesting				-
	Where a portion of the machine or its associated				N
	equipment is changed or modified, the need for				
	re-verification and testing of the electrical equipment				
	shall be considered.				
	l	l			

	EN 60204-1:2018					
Clause	Requirement-Test	Result-Remark	Verdict			
	Particular attention should be given to the possible					
	adverse effects that retesting can have on the equipment					
	(for example overstressing of insulation,					
	disconnection/reconnection of devices).					

18.5 TABLE 1: Residual Voltages Measurements	P
--	---

Test point	Measured time	<60V DC(42V AC)
Test point	(s)	Pass/Fail
L-N	<1s	Pass

18.2	TABLE 3 : Continuity of the protective bonding circuit	N
------	--	---

Location	Current (A)	Measured Resistance (Ω)	Measured voltage(V)	<1V Pass/Fail
PE to enclosure	10.8	0.019	0.205	Pass
PE to motor	10.7	0.016	0.171	Pass
PE to bolt	10.9	0.016	0.174	Pass
PE to transformer	10.8	0.026	0.273	Pass
PE to control panel	10.1	0.019	0.208	Pass

18.3	TABLE 4: Insulation resistance tests	P	
		1	

Loc	ation	Test Voltage (V)d.c	Duration(s)	Measured insulation resistance(MΩ)	>10MΩ Pass/Fail
Motor	L1-PE	534	10	>999.9	Pass
Motor	L2-PE	533	10	>999.9	Pass
Motor	L3-PE	533	10	>999.9	Pass

File No.: TCF22041513MD P167/171

18.4	TABLE 5 : Voltage tests	P	

Test point	Test voltage (V) a.c. / d.c.	Duration (s)	Leakage current(mA)	Breakdown Yes / No
Motor L1-PE	1033 a.c.	60	0.0	No
Motor L2-PE	1032 a.c.	60	0.0	No
Motor L3-PE	1030 a.c.	60	0.0	No

18.6	TABLE 6: Function tests	P

S/N	Function	requirement	Result
1	Transmission parts checking	Suitable for intended use, no abnormal noise	ОК
2	Completed product		OK
3	Emergency stop switch	When press the botton, the machine stop	OK

Annex I

Test instrument list

Item	Equipment	Manufacturer	Model No.	Last Cal.	Cal. Interval
1.	Multitester	Metrel	MI2094	Jun. 01, 21	1 Year
2.	thermometer			Jun. 01, 21	1 Year
3	multimeter	Uni-t	UT890D	Oct. 13,21	1 Year

Temperature: 28°C Humidity: 72%

Notice

- 1. This test report shall be invalidation without the cachet of the testing laboratory.
- 2. This copied report shall be invalidation without sealed the cachet of the testing laboratory.
- 3. This report shall be invalidation without tester signature, reviewer signature and approver signature.
- 4. This altered report shall be invalidation.
- 5. Client shall put forward demurrer within 15days after received report. The testing laboratory shall refuse disposal if exceeded the time limit.
- 6. The test results presented in this report relate only to the object tested.

File No.: TCF22041513MD P169/171

General Technology Group Dalian Machine Tool Imp.&Exp. Co.,Ltd.

Annex: Technical Information

File No.: TCF22041513MD P170/171

A.1 Photo



Fig.1

File No.: TCF22041513MD P171/171